

# bk3000 & bk5000 Ultrasound Systems



## LEGAL MANUFACTURER

**BK Medical Aps**  
Mileparken 34  
DK-2730 Herlev  
Denmark  
Tel.:+45 4452 8100/Fax:+45 4452 8199  
www.bkmedical.com  
Email: info@bkmedical.com

The main label on the back of a BK Medical system monitor contains information about the year of manufacture.

### BK Medical Customer Satisfaction

Input from our customers helps us improve our products and services. Your opinions are important to us. You are always welcome to contact us via your BK Medical representative or by contacting us directly.

### Scanner Software

- **NOT FAULT TOLERANT.** THE SOFTWARE IS NOT FAULT TOLERANT. BK Medical HAS INDEPENDENTLY DETERMINED HOW TO USE THE SOFTWARE IN THE DEVICE, AND MS HAS RELIED UPON BK Medical TO CONDUCT SUFFICIENT TESTING TO DETERMINE THAT THE SOFTWARE IS SUITABLE FOR USE.
- **EXPORT RESTRICTIONS.** You acknowledge that Windows 8 Embedded is of US-origin. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to Windows 8 Embedded, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and country destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information on exporting Windows 8 Embedded, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>
- The bk3000 and bk5000 Ultrasound Systems are closed. Any modification of or installation of software to the system may compromise safety and function of the system. Any modification of or installation of software without written permission from BK Medical will immediately void any warranty supplied by BK Medical. Such changes will also void any service contract and result in charges to the customer for restoration of the original bk3000 or bk5000 Ultrasound System.

### Trademarks:

DICOM<sup>®</sup> is the registered trademark of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association for its standards publications relating to digital communications of medical information.

Curve<sup>®</sup>, Kick<sup>®</sup>, and Buzz<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Brainlab.

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> and Windows<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

**bk3000 & bk5000 = [Ref] 2300**

© 2020 BK Medical

Information in this document may be subject to change without notice.

# Contents

---

- Chapter 1      Before You Begin ..... 15**
- Chapter 2      The User Interface ..... 17**
  - Working with the Monitor ..... 17
    - Starting an Exam ..... 18
    - Pausing an Exam ..... 19
    - Ending the Exam ..... 20
  - Document Browser ..... 20
    - User Preferences ..... 20
    - Measurements and Image Data ..... 23
    - Keyboard Control Panel ..... 23
- Chapter 3      Controls on the Monitor ..... 25**
  - 2D Controls ..... 25
  - Color Controls ..... 26
  - PW Doppler Controls ..... 28
  - M-Mode Controls ..... 30
  - CW Doppler ..... 31
  - Elastography Controls ..... 32
  - Power Mode Controls ..... 33
  - 3D Controls ..... 35
  - 3D Rev. Mode ..... 36
- Chapter 4      Working with the Image ..... 39**
  - Selecting the Imaging Plane ..... 39
  - Freezing the Image ..... 39
    - Partial Freeze and the Update Key ..... 39
  - Split Screen ..... 40
    - Simultaneous Imaging ..... 40
    - Linked Dual ..... 41
  - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows ..... 41
    - Labels ..... 41
    - Bodymarks ..... 43
    - Arrows ..... 44
  - Cine ..... 44
    - Using Cine ..... 45
    - Using Cine in M-Mode or Doppler Mode ..... 46
- Chapter 5      Making Measurements ..... 47**
  - Measurements and Calculations ..... 47
    - Making a Measurement – General Procedure ..... 48
    - 2D and Color Mode Measuring Tools ..... 48
    - Doppler Mode Measuring Tools ..... 55

<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Documentation .....</b>	<b>59</b>
	What are Documents? .....	59
	HIPAA Compliance .....	59
	Saving Documents – Capturing Images and Video Clips .....	59
	Capturing Images .....	59
	Reviewing Documents .....	60
	The Document Browser .....	60
	The Review Window .....	60
	Viewing and Editing Video Clips .....	61
	Viewing Exported Documents on the System .....	61
	Viewing Exported Documents on an External Computer .....	61
	Exporting Data .....	62
	HIPAA Compliance and Exporting Data .....	62
	Exporting Documents .....	62
	Patient List .....	63
	Deleting Documents or Exams from the System .....	64
	Pausing and Later Resuming an Examination .....	64
	Password Protection of Patient Data .....	65
	Hard Disk Quota .....	65
	Reports .....	65
	Creating a Report .....	66
	Editing a Report .....	66
	Preview the Report .....	67
	Printing the Report .....	67
	Saving a Report as Images .....	67
	Printing Documents or Images on the Monitor .....	67
	Printing Thumbnail Images .....	68
	Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor .....	68
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Imaging Modes .....</b>	<b>69</b>
	Imaging Modes .....	69
	Adjusting the Thermal Index Limit .....	69
	2D (B-Mode) .....	70
	Focus .....	70
	Gain .....	71
	Auto Gain .....	72
	Zoom .....	72
	Depth .....	73
	Grayscale Map .....	73
	Combination Modes .....	74
	Tissue Harmonic Imaging (True Echo Harmonics – TEH) .....	74
	Contrast Imaging .....	75
	Needle Enhancement .....	78
	Activate Needle Enhancement .....	79
	Color Mode and Power Mode .....	79
	Color Submodes .....	79
	Color Coding of Flow .....	80
	Independent D-Mode/C-Mode Steering .....	80
	Color Box .....	80

Color Scales .....	80
Elastography .....	81
Color Box .....	81
Color Map .....	82
Quality Indicator .....	82
Strain Ratio Measurement .....	82
Diameter Comparison Measurement .....	83
Doppler Mode – Spectral Doppler .....	84
Turning Doppler Mode On or Off .....	84
Adjusting the Doppler Mode Image .....	85
Doppler Indicator .....	85
Independent D-Mode/C-Mode Steering .....	85
Audio Volume .....	85
Adjusting the Doppler Mode Image .....	86
Doppler Trace (Automatic Curve Tracing) .....	86
Auto .....	86
Gain .....	86
Scale .....	86
Smooth .....	87
Wall Filter .....	87
Invert .....	87
Baseline .....	87
Sweep Speed .....	87
M-Mode .....	88
The M-Mode Image .....	88
M-Mode Line .....	89
M-Mode Image Ruler .....	89
Saving a Preset .....	89
Default Exam Types and Presets .....	90

<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Continuous Wave Doppler Mode .....</b>	<b>91</b>
	Overview .....	91
	Adjusting the Thermal Index Limit .....	91
	Adjusting MI .....	91
	Turning CW Doppler Mode On or Off .....	91
	CW Doppler Line .....	92
	Audio Volume .....	92
	Adjusting the Doppler Mode Image .....	92
	Doppler Trace (Automatic Curve Tracing) .....	92
	Auto .....	93
	Gain .....	93
	Scale .....	93
	Smooth .....	93
	Wall Filter .....	94
	Invert .....	94
	Baseline .....	94
	Sweep Speed .....	94

<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Exam Types</b> .....	<b>95</b>
	Before You Begin .....	95
	If You Perform a Puncture Procedure .....	95
	What Is a Exam Type? .....	95
	Presets .....	95
	Measurements .....	96
	Doppler Measurements .....	97
	Reduction .....	98
	VF (Volume Flow) .....	99
	TAM (Time Average Mean) and TAP (Time Average Peak) .....	99
	RI and PI (Resistance Index and Pulsatility Index) .....	100
	Real-Time Measurements .....	101
	Calculations .....	101
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Vascular Chapter</b> .....	<b>103</b>
	Contents .....	103
	Setting up the Patient – Patient ID .....	103
	Presets .....	103
	Imaging Controls .....	104
	2D (B-Mode) .....	104
	Split Screen .....	104
	Color Mode (CFM) .....	105
	Doppler Mode .....	105
	Volume Flow .....	105
	Vector Flow Imaging (VFI) .....	105
	Using VFI .....	108
	Arrow Flow Indicators for VFI .....	108
	Streamlined VFI Workflow .....	108
	Determining Peak Systolic Velocity .....	109
	Determining Average Volume Flow .....	109
	Outline of VFI Workflow .....	110
	Biopsy .....	111
	Annotations - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows .....	111
	Labels .....	111
	Bodymarks .....	112
	Arrows .....	113
	Measurements and Calculations .....	113
	Using Reports .....	114
	Capturing and Documenting Images .....	114
	Cine Review .....	114
	Capturing Images .....	115
	Copying and Archiving .....	115
	Printing Images .....	115
	Customization Examples .....	116
	Saving a New Preset .....	116
	Default Exam Types and Presets .....	116
	Links to Additional Information .....	117

<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>MSK and Nerve Chapter</b> .....	<b>119</b>
	Contents .....	119
	Setting up the Patient – Patient ID .....	119
	Presets .....	119
	Imaging Controls .....	120
	2D (B-Mode) .....	120
	Split Screen .....	120
	M-Mode .....	121
	Color Mode (CFM) .....	121
	Doppler Mode .....	121
	Volume Flow .....	121
	Biopsy .....	122
	Annotations - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows .....	122
	Labels .....	122
	Bodymarks .....	123
	Arrows .....	124
	Measurements and Calculations .....	125
	Using Reports .....	125
	Capturing and Documenting Images .....	125
	Cine Review .....	125
	Capturing Images .....	125
	Copying and Archiving .....	126
	Printing Images .....	126
	Customization Examples .....	126
	Saving a New Preset .....	126
	Default Exam Types and Presets .....	127
	Links to Additional Information .....	127
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Cardiac Chapter</b> .....	<b>129</b>
	Contents .....	129
	Setting up the Patient – Patient ID .....	129
	Presets .....	129
	Imaging Controls .....	130
	2D (B-mode) .....	130
	Split Screen .....	130
	M-Mode .....	131
	Color Mode (CFM) .....	131
	Doppler Mode .....	131
	Volume Flow .....	132
	Annotations - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows .....	132
	Labels .....	132
	Bodymarks .....	133
	Arrows .....	134
	Measurements and Calculations .....	135
	Cardiac LV Protocol (Left Ventricular Protocol) .....	135
	HR (Heart Rate) .....	136
	Cardiac Output .....	136
	FATE (Focus Assessed Transthoracic Echocardiography) .....	137
	FATE Measurements .....	137

Using Reports .....	138
Capturing and Documenting Images .....	139
Cine Review .....	139
Capturing Images .....	139
Copying and Archiving .....	139
Printing Images .....	139
Customization Example .....	140
Saving a New Preset .....	140
Default Exam Types and Presets .....	140
Links to Additional Information .....	141

**Chapter 13 Urology Prostate Chapter ..... 143**

Contents .....	143
Setting up the Patient – Patient ID .....	143
Presets .....	143
Imaging Controls .....	144
2D (B-mode) .....	144
Split Screen .....	144
Color Mode (CFM) .....	145
Doppler Mode .....	145
Volume Flow .....	145
To Change Imaging Planes .....	145
Biopsy .....	146
Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows .....	146
Labels .....	146
Bodymarks .....	147
Arrows .....	148
Measurements and Calculations .....	149
Calculation of Prostate Volume .....	149
Calculation of Breast Lesion Volume .....	150
Calculation of Kidney Volume .....	151
Using Reports .....	151
Capturing and Documenting Images .....	152
Cine Review .....	152
Capturing Images .....	152
Copying and Archiving .....	152
Printing Images .....	152
Customization Example .....	153
Saving a New Preset .....	153
Default Exam Types and Presets .....	153
Links to Additional Information .....	154

**Chapter 14 Brachytherapy Chapter ..... 155**

Contents .....	155
Setting up the Patient – Patient ID .....	155
Presets .....	156
Imaging Controls .....	156
2D (B-mode) .....	156
Split Screen .....	157



To Change Imaging Planes . . . . .	157
Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows . . . . .	157
Labels . . . . .	157
Bodymarks . . . . .	158
Arrows . . . . .	159
Measurements and Calculations . . . . .	160
Calculating Volumes . . . . .	160
Performing a Biopsy or Puncture Procedure (including Brachytherapy) . . . . .	161
Using Reports . . . . .	163
Capturing and Documenting Images . . . . .	163
Cine Review . . . . .	163
Capturing Images . . . . .	164
Copying and Archiving . . . . .	164
Printing Images . . . . .	164
Customization Example . . . . .	164
Saving a New Preset . . . . .	164
Default Exam Types and Presets . . . . .	165
Links to Additional Information . . . . .	166

**Chapter 15 OB and GYN Chapter . . . . . 167**

Contents . . . . .	167
Setting up the Patient – Patient ID . . . . .	167
Presets . . . . .	168
Gestational Age and Expected Date of Confinement . . . . .	169
Imaging Controls . . . . .	169
2D (B-mode) . . . . .	169
Split Screen . . . . .	169
Color Mode (CFM) . . . . .	169
Doppler Mode . . . . .	170
Biopsy . . . . .	170
Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows . . . . .	170
Labels . . . . .	171
Bodymarks . . . . .	172
Arrows . . . . .	173
Measurements and Calculations . . . . .	174
Calculation Methods - GYN . . . . .	174
Calculation Methods - OB . . . . .	176
Obstetrics Reports . . . . .	176
Using Reports . . . . .	178
Capturing and Documenting Images . . . . .	178
Cine Review . . . . .	178
Capturing Images . . . . .	178
Copying and Archiving . . . . .	179
Printing Images . . . . .	179
Customization Example . . . . .	179
Saving a New Preset . . . . .	179
Default Exam Types and Presets . . . . .	180
Links to Additional Information . . . . .	180

<b>Chapter 16</b>	<b>Surgery Chapter</b> .....	<b>183</b>
	Contents .....	183
	Setting up the Patient – Patient ID .....	183
	Presets .....	184
	Imaging Controls .....	184
	2D (B-mode) .....	184
	Split Screen .....	184
	Biopsy .....	185
	Color Mode (CFM) .....	185
	Doppler Mode .....	185
	Elastography .....	186
	Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows .....	186
	Labels .....	186
	Bodymarks .....	187
	Arrows .....	188
	Measurements and Calculations .....	188
	Distance .....	188
	Freehand Measurements – Area and Circumference .....	189
	Volume .....	189
	Using Reports .....	190
	Capturing and Documenting Images .....	190
	Cine Review .....	190
	Capturing Images .....	190
	Copying and Archiving .....	191
	Printing Images .....	191
	Customization Example .....	191
	Saving a New Preset .....	191
	Default Exam Types and Presets .....	192
	Links to Additional Information .....	192
<b>Chapter 17</b>	<b>Neurosurgery Chapter</b> .....	<b>193</b>
	Contents .....	193
	Setting up the Patient – Patient ID .....	193
	Presets .....	193
	Imaging Controls .....	194
	2D (B-mode) .....	194
	Split Screen .....	194
	Biopsy .....	195
	Color Mode (CFM) .....	195
	Doppler Mode .....	195
	Elastography .....	196
	Measurements and Calculations .....	196
	Distance .....	196
	Freehand Measurements – Area and Circumference .....	196
	Volume .....	197
	Using Reports .....	197
	Capturing and Documenting Images .....	197
	Cine Review .....	197
	Capturing Images .....	198

	Copying and Archiving .....	198
	Printing Images.....	198
	Customization Example.....	198
	Saving a New Preset.....	198
	Default Exam Types and Presets .....	199
	Imaging with Brainlab.....	199
	Contact with the Company.....	199
	Installation and Setup.....	199
	Spinal Cord Exam Type .....	200
	Links to Additional Information .....	200
<b>Chapter 18</b>	<b>3D Imaging .....</b>	<b>203</b>
	Introduction to 3D Ultrasound.....	203
	3D License.....	203
	Controlling Transducer Movement.....	203
	360° built-in 3D-imaging .....	204
	Untracked Freehand Acquisition .....	204
	3D Imaging Overview.....	204
	Preparations.....	204
	Adjusting the Image Capture Settings.....	205
	ROI (3D Region of Interest).....	205
	3D Capture Settings .....	206
	Acquisition .....	206
	Viewing a 3D Data Set .....	207
	Enhancing a 3D View.....	207
	3D Layout Options .....	207
	Working with the 3D Image .....	208
	Manipulating the Volume.....	208
	Annotating a 3D View .....	209
	The 6 3D Views.....	210
	Cube View .....	210
	Render View.....	212
	MIP View .....	213
	4-Up View .....	213
	6-Up View .....	214
	Transparency View.....	214
<b>Chapter 19</b>	<b>DICOM .....</b>	<b>217</b>
	DICOM on the System .....	217
	New Patient Information from a DICOM Worklist .....	217
	Saving or Printing to a DICOM Network .....	217
	Filenames of Documents Exported in DICOM Format .....	217
	Exporting to a PACS .....	218
	Reports .....	218
	Deleting a Document .....	219

<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Glossary</b> .....	<b>221</b>
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>Measurement Abbreviations</b> .....	<b>227</b>
<b>Appendix C</b>	<b>Setting Up and Customizing Your System</b> .....	<b>257</b>
	System Window .....	258
	Header Tab .....	258
	Display Tab .....	258
	Patient Data Tab .....	259
	Localization Tab .....	260
	Video Out Tab .....	260
	Preset Window .....	261
	Available Tab .....	261
	Default Tab .....	261
	Manage Tab .....	262
	Measure & Calcs Window .....	262
	General Tab .....	262
	Calc List Tab .....	263
	Default Calc Tab .....	264
	Results Tab .....	264
	Preferences Tab .....	265
	OB/Gyn Window .....	265
	Preferences tab .....	265
	Authors tab .....	266
	Labeling Window .....	266
	Labels Tab .....	266
	Default Labels Tab .....	267
	Bodymarks Tab .....	268
	Default Bodymarks Tab .....	269
	Needle Guide Tab .....	269
	Configure Layout Window .....	276
	Store/Network Window .....	277
	Store/Clip Tab .....	277
	Printers Tab .....	278
	DICOM/PACS Tab .....	279
	Wi-Fi Tab .....	280
	Network Drive .....	280
	Security Window .....	281
	General Tab .....	281
	User Manager Tab .....	281
	Audit Logs .....	285
	3D/4D .....	285
	Service Window .....	286
	General Tab .....	286
	License Tab .....	286
	About Tab .....	287
	TP Licenses Tab .....	287
	OEM setup .....	288

English Source Version  
16-01487-EN-03



# Chapter 1

## Before You Begin

---

This is the advanced user guide for the bk3000 and bk5000 ultrasound systems.

The *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* includes an overview of all the documentation available for the system, including different user guides.

**NOTE:** *You must read the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide before working with the system.*

This guide takes you deeper into the functionality and potential of the bk3000 and bk5000 ultrasound systems.

**NOTE:** *Some of the functionality and options described in this guide may not be available with your version of the system.*

Questions About the System	Where to Find the Answers
What are the various parts of the monitor display?	"The User Interface" on page 17
Is there an alphabetical list of all the controls on the system?	"Controls on the Monitor" on page 25
How do you make measurements and calculations for an image, and what measurement tools are available?	"Making Measurements" on page 47
How do you manage the images, clips, 3D data sets, and reports that are made on the system?	"Documentation" on page 59
What imaging modes are available on the bk3000 and bk5000?	"Imaging Modes" on page 69 and "3D Imaging" on page 203
What is an examination type, and how does it help with imaging?	"Exam Types" on page 95
How does DICOM <sup>®</sup> work with the bk3000 and bk5000?	"DICOM" on page 217
What do various abbreviations mean?	"Glossary" on page 221
Can the bk3000 and bk5000 be customized and how?	"Setting Up and Customizing Your System" on page 257, and "Redefining Screen Keys – Label, Bodymark, and Measurement" on page 265,
How do you configure the system?	"Configuring the bk3000 and bk5000" on page 269





# Chapter 2

## The User Interface

### Working with the Monitor

This chapter introduces you to each part of the monitor (Fig 2-1).

For a description of the keyboard, see *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000*.

The first 3 steps for imaging are:

- 1 Enter patient information
- 2 Select a transducer
- 3 Select exam type and preset.

You can select to work in the upper part of the monitor to perform these steps, as shown in Fig 2-1. Or you can select to follow the procedure in *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000*.

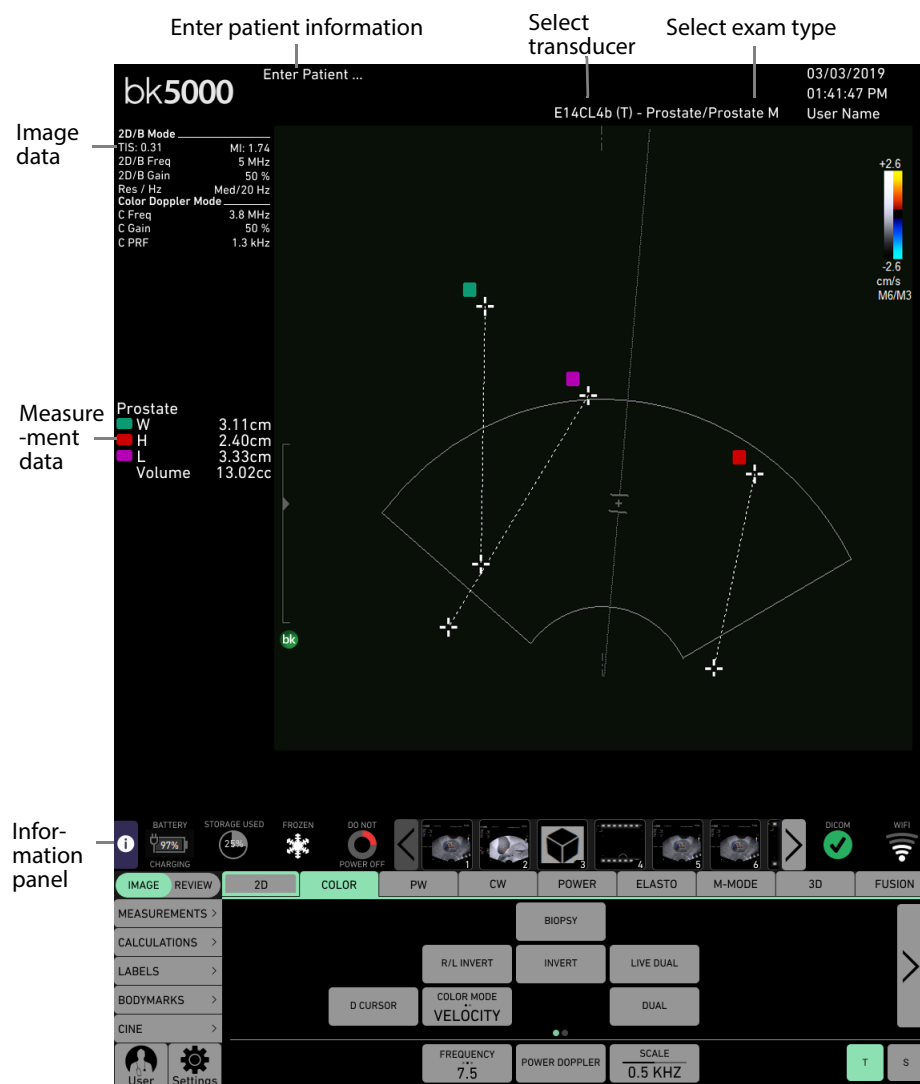



Figure 2-1. The monitor user interface for the bk3000 and bk5000.

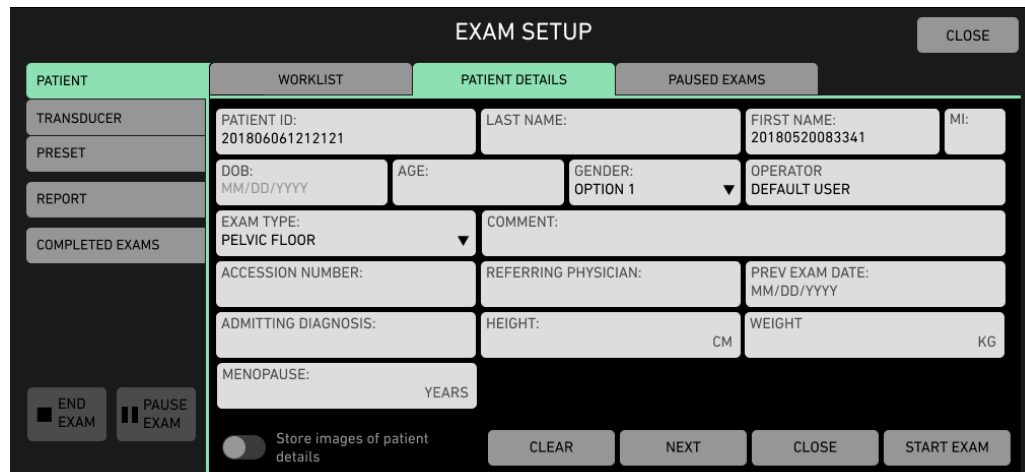
## Starting an Exam

### The first 3 steps for imaging are:

- 1 Enter the patient information.
- 2 Select a transducer.
- 3 Select an exam type and a preset.

### Do as follows:

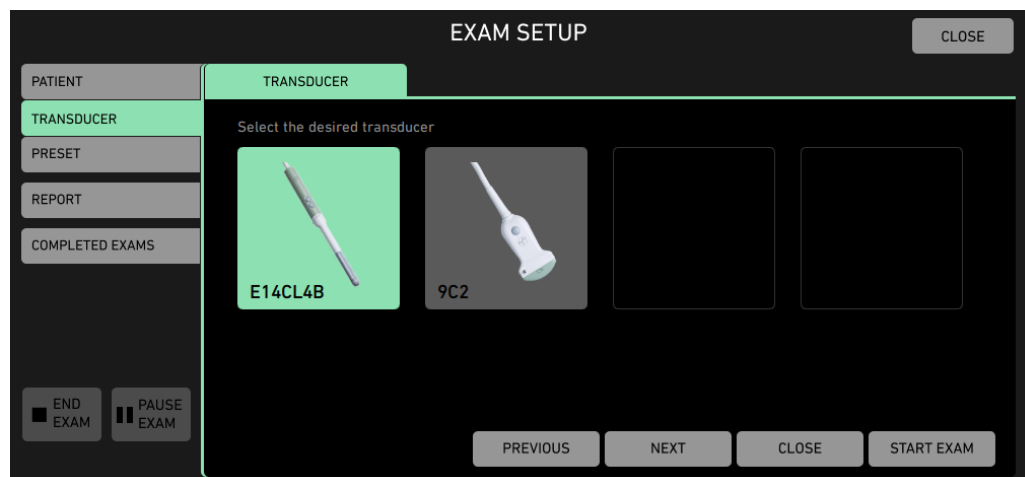
- 1 Press the **Patient** key  on the keyboard. The **Exam Setup** window opens. Here you can select a patient from the DICOM **worklist** or enter patient information.
- 2 If you do not have a DICOM system, enter patient information on the **Patient Details** tab. The **Patient ID** is filled in automatically with a date/timestamp, but you can change this to a relevant ID.



The screenshot shows the 'EXAM SETUP' window with the 'PATIENT DETAILS' tab selected. The window has a sidebar on the left with buttons for 'PATIENT', 'WORKLIST', 'PRESET', 'REPORT', 'COMPLETED EXAMS', 'END EXAM', and 'PAUSE EXAM'. The main area contains several input fields: 'PATIENT ID' (201806061212121), 'LAST NAME', 'FIRST NAME' (20180520083341), 'MI', 'DOB' (MM/DD/YYYY), 'AGE', 'GENDER' (OPTION 1), 'OPERATOR' (DEFAULT USER), 'EXAM TYPE' (PELVIC FLOOR), 'COMMENT', 'ACCESSION NUMBER', 'REFERRING PHYSICIAN', 'PREV EXAM DATE' (MM/DD/YYYY), 'ADMITTING DIAGNOSIS', 'HEIGHT' (CM), 'WEIGHT' (KG), and 'MENOPAUSE' (YEARS). There is a toggle for 'Store images of patient details' and buttons for 'CLEAR', 'NEXT', 'CLOSE', and 'START EXAM'.

Figure 2-2. Exam Setup - Patient Details

- 3 If you select **Store Images of Patient Details**, an image of the patient details will be stored in the document browser and the review window.
- 4 Click **Next** to select transducer. All connected transducers will be displayed on the **Transducer** tab.



The screenshot shows the 'EXAM SETUP' window with the 'TRANSDUCER' tab selected. The sidebar on the left is the same as in Figure 2-2. The main area displays 'Select the desired transducer' with two options: 'E14CL4B' (a probe) and '9C2' (a probe). There are also two empty boxes for other transducers. Buttons for 'PREVIOUS', 'NEXT', 'CLOSE', and 'START EXAM' are at the bottom.

Figure 2-3. Exam Setup - Transducer

5 Click **Next** to select **Exam Type** and **Preset** on the **Preset** tab.

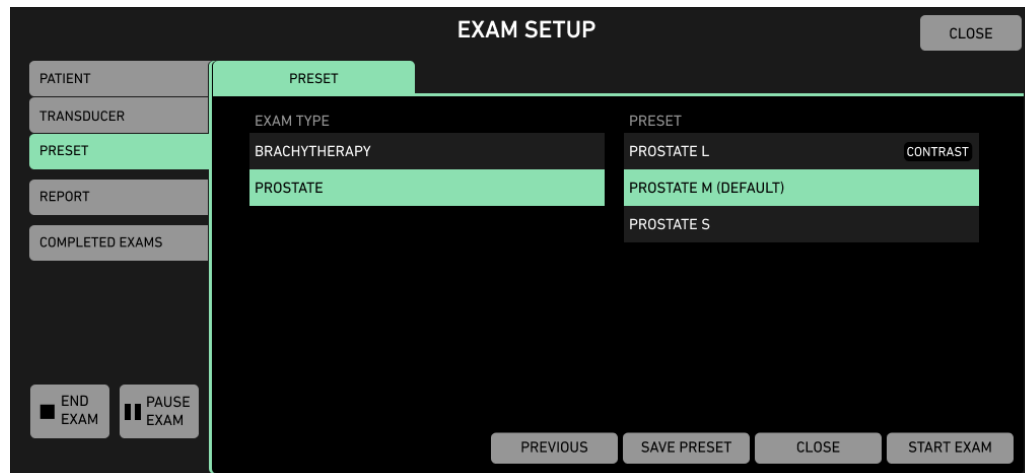


Figure 2-4. Exam Setup - Preset

For information about examination types, see Chapter 9, “Exam Types” on page 95.

6 Click **Start Exam** to start the exam.

You can also start the exam immediately after entering **Patient Details**. Click **Start Exam** and select transducer using the transducer control button. The system will use the default exam type and preset.

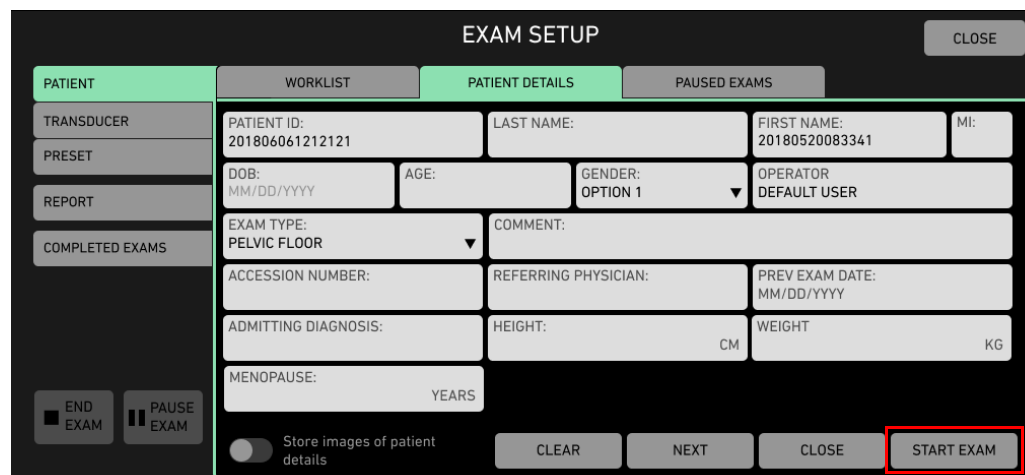






Figure 2-5. Start Exam

## Pausing an Exam

To pause the exam, access the **Exam Setup** by pressing , and click . You find the paused exams on the **Paused Exams** tab. From here, you can select an exam and click **Resume Exam**.

## Ending the Exam

The exam ends when you press **End Exam**  or access the **Exam Setup** by pressing the **Patient**, **Exam Type**, or **Probe** key, and then clicking .

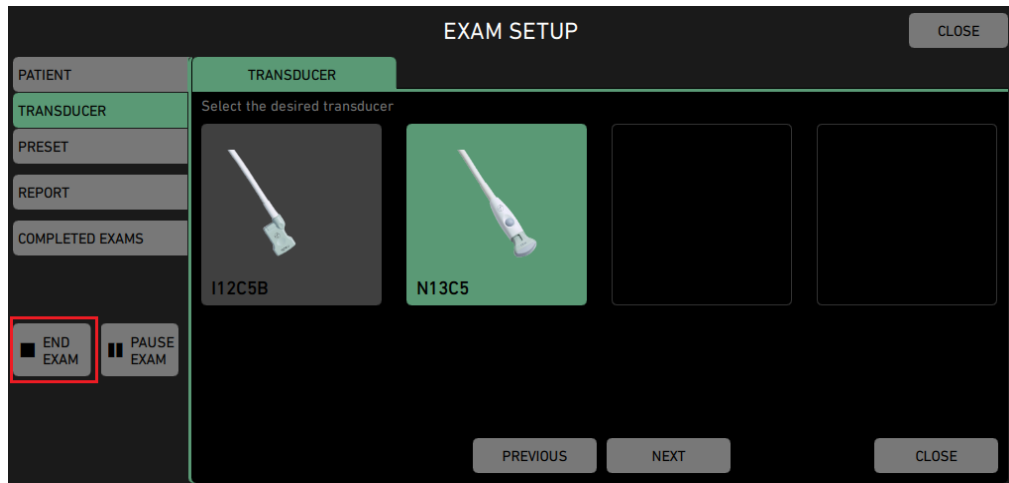


Figure 2-6. End Exam

## Document Browser

For information about using the Document Browser, see Chapter 6, “Documentation” on page 59.

### View Profile

To view and edit user profile:

- 1 Select user and click **View Profile**.
- 2 In the **General** view, add or replace user photo.
- 3 Click the toggle button to select if **Password required during login** should be activated.
- 4 If a password is required, type in the password according to the instructions on the screen.
- 5 Use the radio buttons to select if the user should have a **Regular Profile** or be a **System Administrator**.
- 6 Click the toggle button to select if the user should be able to modify the profile. This does not allow the user to change a regular profile into a system administrator.

### User Preferences

To edit User Preferences:

- 1 Click the **User** button, next to the **Settings** button in the workspace
- 2 In the **View Profile** window, click **Preferences**.

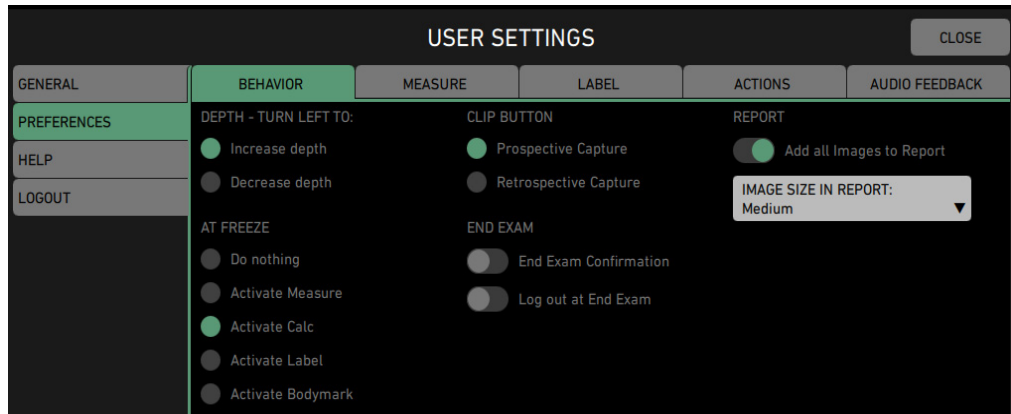


Figure 2-7. User Preferences, Behavior tab

On the **Behavior** tab, you can:

- Select turning direction of **Depth** key.
- Select system reaction **At Freeze**.
- Decide if the **Clip Button** should record a prospective or retrospective video clip.
- Decide if the user should receive a confirmation or be logged out at the end of the exam.
- Select if all images from the current exam should automatically be added to the **Report**, and select default size of these images.

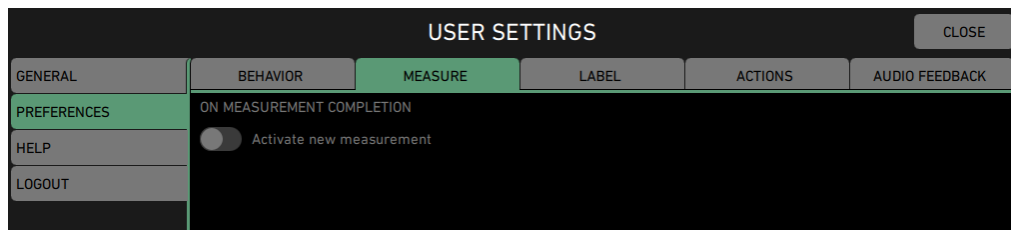


Figure 2-8. User Preferences, Measure tab.

On the **Measure** tab, you can:

- Decide how the system should react on measurement completion.

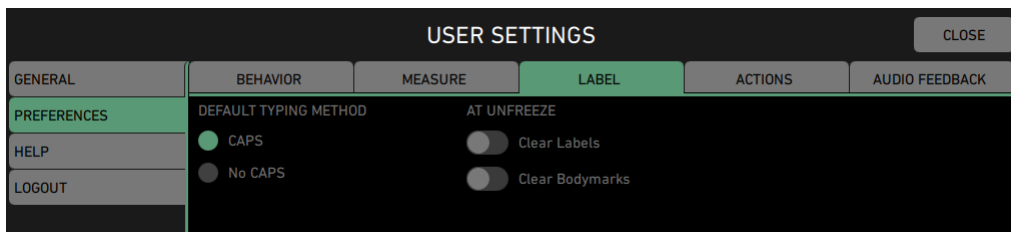


Figure 2-9. User Preferences, Label tab.

On the **Label** tab, you can:

- Decide whether typed-in labels should appear in **Caps** or not.
- Select if labels or bodymarks should be cleared at Unfreeze.

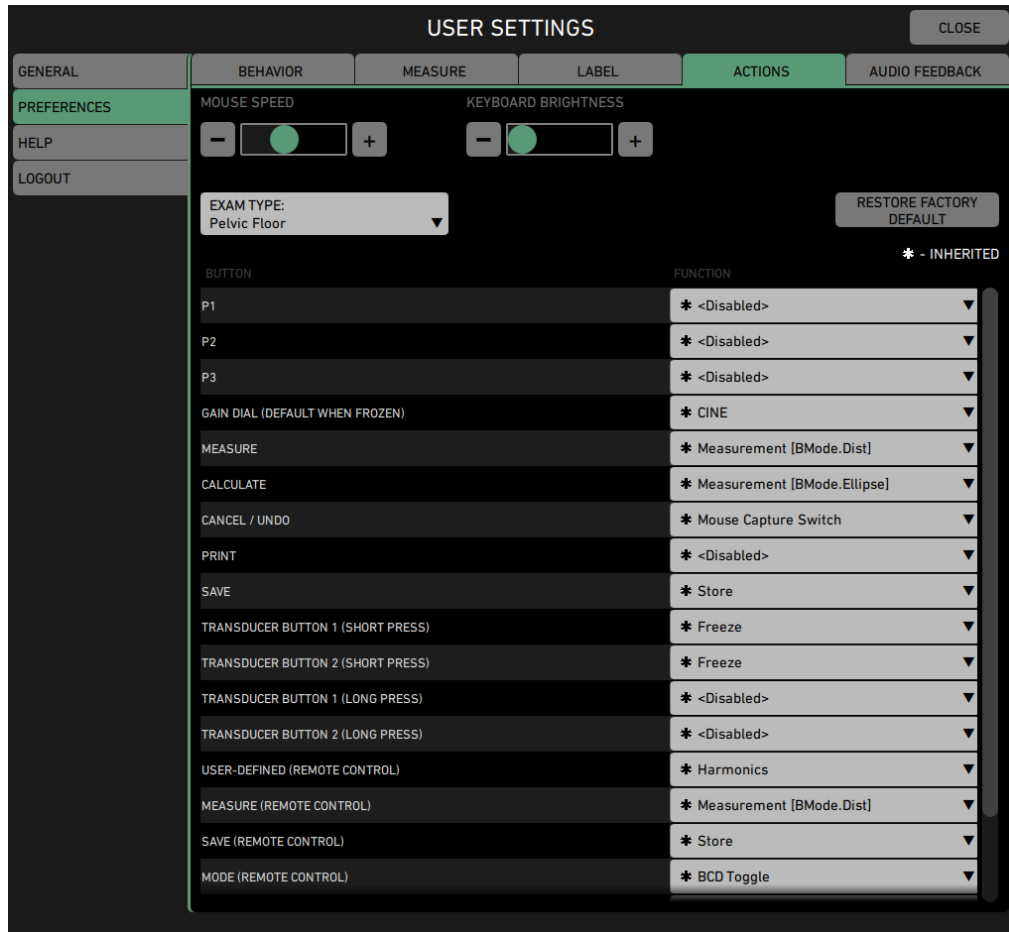


Figure 2-10. User Preferences, Actions tab.

On the **Actions** tab, you can:

- Set the **Keyboard Brightness**.
- Select **Mouse Speed**.
- Select functions for buttons on the dropdown menus.

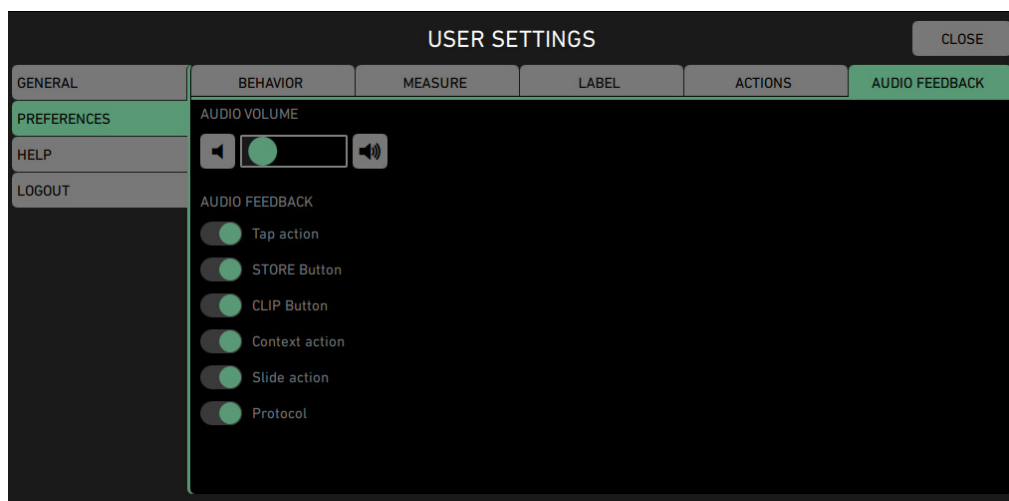


Figure 2-11. User Preferences, Audio Feedback tab

On the Audio Feedback tab, you can:

- Adjust **Audio Volume**.
- Select or deselect actions, buttons, and protocol for Audio Feedback.

Click **Close** to exit **User Preferences**.

## Measurements and Image Data

For information about making and using measurements on the system, see Chapter 5, “Making Measurements” on page 47.

For information about working with the image, see Chapter 4, “Working with the Image” on page 39.

### Review

After acquiring the image and making measurements, click **Review** for archiving, copying, reviewing, or deleting the images and reports you made.

## Keyboard Control Panel

The keyboard control keys are described in *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000*.

### Typing Special Letters or Accents

Some special letters are available as keys on the keyboard. In addition, 4 accents are available on the **Accent** key.



Figure 2-12. The Accent key.

To use accents, press the **Accent** key and THEN press the letter that is to be accented.

Examples:

To write this	Press this	Then press this
ö or (Ö)	<b>Accent</b>	<b>o</b> (or <b>Shift + o</b> , for O)
è or (È)	<b>Shift + Accent</b>	<b>e</b> (or <b>Shift + e</b> , for E)
ñ (or Ñ)	<b>fn+ Accent</b>	<b>n</b> (or <b>Shift + n</b> , for N)
ê (or Ê)	<b>Shift + fn+ Accent</b>	<b>e</b> (or <b>Shift + e</b> , for E)





## Chapter 3

# Controls on the Monitor

---

This chapter contains a list of the buttons on the monitor in alphabetical order. Some buttons only appear when the system has been set up to display them. See Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”.

### 2D Controls

Monitor Control	Function
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.
<b>2D Filter</b>	Speckle reduction algorithm. 2D Filter can be set at 5 different levels ranging from subtle speckle reduction (level 1) to strong reduction (level 5). The default level is 3, level 0 turns 2D Filter off.
<b>Anatomical Pos</b>	Anatomical position for 20R3. Use the scale button to set the actual insertion depth of the transducer.
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Auto Gain</b>	Auto gain makes it possible to have the same brightness across different patients and body parts.
<b>Auto Gn. Level</b>	Displays the level for Auto Gain.
<b>Auto Mode</b>	Defines the way Auto Gain is adjusted.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Compounding</b>	Reduces speckle and optimizes the ultrasound image.
<b>Crystal Pos</b>	Crystal position for 203. The default position is 0 when the crystal is at the tip of the transducer. Use the scale button to change the crystal position.
<b>D Cursor</b>	Doppler cursor.
<b>Depth</b>	Displays tissue depth of the image.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.
<b>Dynamic Range</b>	Adjust contrast. Lower dynamic range = higher contrast. Higher dynamic range = lower contrast.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>Edge</b>	Edge enhancement. Emphasize contours in image so that edges stand out more clearly.
<b>Frequency</b>	Select imaging frequency. The current imaging frequency is displayed on the button.
<b>Harmonics</b>	Tissue harmonic imaging on and off. When you turn it off, imaging resumes with the frequency, gain, dynamic range, etc. that you were using previously.
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor.
<b>Linked Dual</b>	Automatically transfers the parameters from screen A to screen B (and vice versa).
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>Map</b>	Grayscale map
<b>MI Limit</b>	Sets the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Enhance</b>	Activates the Needle Enhancement function for best needle visibility.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>Needle Str</b>	Adjusts the visibility of the needle. This button is only visible if you have selected Needle Enhance.
<b>Noise Reject</b>	Reduces noise in the image by removing the darker gray colors.
<b>Patient Temp</b>	Designates the patient's temperature.
<b>Persistence</b>	Set persistence level of the image.
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Sector Width</b>	Allows you to expand and reduce the sector width.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the Doppler line.
<b>SV Size</b>	Resize the Doppler gate.
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Tint</b>	Sets the tint of the image. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.

## Color Controls

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Auto Scale</b>	Automatic Scale/PRF adjustment.
<b>Baseline</b>	Repositions the baseline (offsets the Doppler Color scale) to help with aliasing problems.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Color Mode</b>	Sets the color mode. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>D Cursor</b>	Doppler cursor.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.
<b>Frequency</b>	Select imaging frequency. The current imaging frequency is displayed on the button.
<b>Hide Color</b>	Removes color from the image.
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor in %.
<b>Invert</b>	Invert color coding of flow information so that flow towards the transducer appears blue and flow away from the transducer appears red.
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>Map</b>	Color map.
<b>MI Limit</b>	Set the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>Persistence</b>	Sets persistence level of the image.
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Scale</b>	Vary the PRF (pulse repetition frequency) to select the range of Doppler velocities (frequencies) that are displayed in the spectrum and/or color-coded.
<b>Smoothing</b>	Softens the colors.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the Doppler line.
<b>SV Size</b>	Resize the Doppler gate.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Tissue Priority</b>	Adjusts the priority given to color (flow information). High tissue priority gives color in more areas; low tissue priority reduces the number of areas that are colored.
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>VFI Arrow Size</b>	Sets the size of the VFI arrows. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>VFI Grid Size</b>	Sets the size of the VFI grid. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Wall Filter</b>	Adjust the wall filter. The current value is displayed on the button.

## PW Doppler Controls

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Assist</b>	Enables assist functionality: vessel outline, assisted steering, assisted angle correction, and assisted caliper placement for volume flow.
<b>Auto Scale</b>	Automatic Scale/PRF adjustment.
<b>Auto Vol Flow</b>	Measures volume flow in ml/min. Opens the Doppler gate to span the entire vessel, setting calipers to measure the diameter of the vessel.
<b>Baseline</b>	Reposition the Doppler mode baseline to help with aliasing problems. The frequency axis is updated to match the spectrum.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>D Cursor</b>	Doppler cursor.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.
<b>Frequency</b>	Select imaging frequency. The current imaging frequency is displayed on the button.
<b>Full Size</b>	Maximize the size of the image.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor in %.
<b>Invert</b>	Inverts the spectrum on the monitor.
<b>Layout</b>	Sets the layout for a Doppler (split) screen: top/bottom or side by side
<b>Layout Size</b>	Select large, medium or small for the ultrasound image.
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>Map</b>	Color/Grayscale Map.
<b>MI Limit</b>	Set the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>Noise Limit</b>	Reduces noise in the Doppler curve.
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Scale</b>	Vary the PRF (pulse repetition frequency) to select the range of Doppler velocities (frequencies) that are displayed in the spectrum and/or color-coded.
<b>Smoothing</b>	Softens the colors.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the Doppler line.
<b>SV Size</b>	Resize the Doppler gate.
<b>Sweep Speed</b>	Sets the number of cycles of the spectrum displayed on the full time axis. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Sync Steer</b>	Synchronizes the steering of box and gate.
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Trace</b>	Activate automatic Doppler curve tracing and specify the type: Peak, Mean+Peak, or Mean.
<b>Triplex</b>	2D/Color image and Doppler spectrum both active.
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Vessel Detect</b>	Adjusts vessel outline. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>VFI Update</b>	Places the Doppler gate at the highest velocity in the vessel.
<b>Volume</b>	Adjust the volume of the audio signal in Doppler mode.
<b>Wall Filter</b>	Turn the wall filter on and set the cut-off frequency.

## M-Mode Controls

Monitor Control	Function
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.
<b>Full Size</b>	Maximize the size of the image.
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor in %.
<b>Layout</b>	Sets the layout for an M-mode (split) screen: top/bottom or side by side
<b>Layout Size</b>	Select large, medium or small for the ultrasound image.
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>M Sync Gain</b>	Synchronizes Gain in relation to 2D image.
<b>MI Limit</b>	Set the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the M-mode line.
<b>Sweep Speed</b>	Sets the number of cycles of the spectrum displayed on the full time axis. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Trace</b>	Activate automatic Doppler curve tracing and specify the type: Peak, Mean+Peak, or Mean.
<b>Triplex</b>	2D/Color image and CW Doppler spectrum both active.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.

## CW Doppler

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Baseline</b>	Reposition the Doppler mode baseline to help with aliasing problems. The frequency axis is updated to match the spectrum.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>D Cursor</b>	Doppler cursor.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.
<b>Frequency</b>	Select imaging frequency. The current imaging frequency is displayed on the button.
<b>Full Size</b>	Maximize the size of the image.
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor.
<b>Invert</b>	Inverts the spectrum on the monitor.
<b>Layout</b>	Sets the layout for a Doppler (split) screen: top/bottom or side by side
<b>Layout Size</b>	Select large, medium, or small for the Doppler spectrum.
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>Map</b>	Color map
<b>MI Limit</b>	Sets the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>Noise Limit</b>	Reduces noise in the Doppler curve.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Scale</b>	Vary the PRF (pulse repetition frequency) to select the range of Doppler velocities (frequencies) that are displayed in the spectrum and/or color-coded.
<b>Smoothing</b>	Softens the colors.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the Doppler line.
<b>SV Size</b>	Resize the Doppler gate.
<b>Sweep Speed</b>	Sets the number of cycles of the spectrum displayed on the full time axis. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Trace</b>	Activate automatic Doppler curve tracing and specify the type: Peak, Mean+Peak, or Mean.
<b>Triplex</b>	2D/Color image and Doppler spectrum both active.
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Volume</b>	Adjust the volume of the audio signal in Doppler mode.
<b>Wall Filter</b>	Turn the wall filter on and set the cut-off frequency.

## Elastography Controls

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.



<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>Dynamic Range</b>	Adjust contrast. Lower dynamic range = higher contrast. Higher dynamic range = lower contrast.
<b>E Reject</b>	Increase visibility of cysts.
<b>Enhance</b>	Enhances the mode.
<b>Frequency</b>	Select imaging frequency. The current imaging frequency is displayed on the button.
<b>Gain</b>	Sets the gain.
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor in %.
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>Map</b>	Color map.
<b>MI Limit</b>	Sets the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>Opacity</b>	Overlay of 2D and elastography.
<b>Persistence</b>	Set persistence level of the image.
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Resolution</b>	Change the elastography resolution.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the Doppler line.
<b>SV Size</b>	Resize the Doppler gate.
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.

## Power Mode Controls

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Color Mode</b>	Sets the color mode. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>D Cursor</b>	Doppler cursor.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.
<b>Frequency</b>	Select imaging frequency. The current imaging frequency is displayed on the button.
<b>Hide Color</b>	Removes color from the image.
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor in %.
<b>Invert</b>	Inverts the spectrum on the monitor.
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>Map</b>	Color map.
<b>MI Limit</b>	Sets the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>Persistence</b>	Sets persistence level of the image.
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Scale</b>	Vary the PRF (pulse repetition frequency) to select the range of Doppler velocities (frequencies) that are displayed in the spectrum and/or color-coded.
<b>Smoothing</b>	Softens the colors.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the Doppler line.
<b>SV Size</b>	Resize the Doppler gate.
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Tissue Priority</b>	Adjusts the priority given to color (flow information). High tissue priority gives color in more areas; low tissue priority reduces the number of areas that are colored.
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>VFI Arrow Size</b>	Sets the size of the VFI arrows. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>VFI Grid Size</b>	Sets the size of the VFI grid. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Wall Filter</b>	Turn the wall filter on and set the cut-off frequency.

## 3D Controls

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>0/60 Degree</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, fixed intervals -60, 0, 60.
<b>3D Acquire</b>	Acquires a 3D volume. A progress circle appears during acquisition.
<b>3D Direction</b>	Sets the 3D direction L-R or R-L.
<b>3D Distance</b>	Sets the distance the transducer will travel to acquire the 3D volume in mm. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>3D Spacing</b>	Sets spacing between frames in mm. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>3D Sweep Mode</b>	Move the transducer freely to acquire a 3D image - set Untracked Linear or Untracked Fan.
<b>Acquire Time</b>	Set duration of a 3D data acquisition. The current value is displayed on the button. Image quality increases with an increased acquire time.
<b>Angle Correct</b>	Angle correction line in Doppler mode, 1 degree increments from -89 to 89.
<b>Biopsy</b>	Displays a puncture line or brachy matrix.
<b>Cine Play</b>	Shows the Cine sequence, that you have selected using the trim buttons.
<b>Cine Start Marker</b>	Marks the starting frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Stop Marker</b>	Marks the final frame of a cine clip showed on monitor.
<b>Cine Trim End</b>	Places the end marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Cine Trim Start</b>	Places the start marker on the Cine sequence.
<b>Dual</b>	Activates/deactivates split screen.
<b>Dual Layout</b>	Displays split screen either side by side or top/bottom.
<b>Image Size</b>	The size of the image on the monitor in %.
<b>Live Dual</b>	Simultaneous imaging.
<b>MI Limit</b>	Sets the Mechanical Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>Motion Comp</b>	Algorithm to compensate for movement.
<b>Needle Guide</b>	Displays the needle guide(s) available for the selected transducer.
<b>R/L Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation right/left. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>Res Enhance</b>	Adjusts the balance between resolution and frame rate, e.g. Min gives 1 focus point and a high frame rate.
<b>Steer</b>	Change the angle of the Doppler line.
<b>Stitch</b>	Set the stitch angle of the transducer.
<b>SV Size</b>	Resize the Doppler gate.
<b>TI Limit</b>	Sets the Tissue Index Limit. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>TI Type</b>	Select Tissue index type. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>U/D Invert</b>	Inverts the image orientation up/down. The circle with the bk logo on the monitor corresponds to the logo on the transducer tip.

## 3D Rev. Mode

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>3D Animate</b>	Activates/deactivates rotation of the 3D volume.
<b>3D Brightness</b>	Set the brightness of the 3D volume. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>3D Contrast</b>	Set the dynamic range of the 3D volume. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>3D Filter</b>	Set threshold so pixels not as bright as threshold are not displayed. Can help eliminate noise in 3D volumes.
<b>3D Hue</b>	Set a color hue for the 3D volume.
<b>3D Label</b>	Type a label for the 3D volume. Use the trackpad to place it and click to set the label.
<b>3D Luminance</b>	Controls the brightness of structures within the volume.
<b>3D Opacity</b>	Sets the opacity of the 3D volume, allowing visualization of structures beneath the surface.
<b>3D Sculpture</b>	Turns sculpting of the 3D cube on and off.
<b>3D Thickness</b>	Sets thickness in photo and non-photo mode in 3D.
<b>3D View</b>	Select how the 3D volume is displayed. The current value is displayed on the button.
<b>3D Zoom</b>	Zoom 3D Volume.
<b>Animation Span</b>	Sets the extent of the rotation of a 3D volume.
<b>Animation Speed</b>	Sets the speed of the rotation of a 3D volume
<b>Arrow</b>	Displays an arrow on the 3D volume.
<b>Clear Labels</b>	Delete any labels that you have typed on the 3D volume.
<b>Clear Measurements</b>	Delete any measurements you have made on the 3D volume.
<b>Clear Sculpture</b>	Clears 3D sculpting.

<b>Monitor Control</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>Default View</b>	Restores the acquired image, removing any changes.
<b>Gray Level</b>	Adjust the gray level of the 3D volume.
<b>HWL</b>	Measure volume by HWL.
<b>Measure Angle</b>	Measure Angle in 3D.
<b>Measure Area</b>	Measure Area in 3D.
<b>Measure Dist.</b>	Measure distance in 3D.
<b>New Volume</b>	Returns to the Review window.
<b>Next</b>	Steps forward through images in the volume
<b>Orientation</b>	Displays or hides orientation markers in 3D volumes.
<b>Photorealistic</b>	Adjusts the photorealistic characteristics of the 3D volume.
<b>Prev</b>	Steps backward through images in the volume.
<b>Redo Label</b>	Restore the most recent label that has been undone.
<b>Redo Measure</b>	Restore the most recent measurement that has been undone.
<b>Rotation</b>	Sets the 3D volume to rotate horizontally or vertically.
<b>Sculpt. Depth</b>	Sets the penetration of the sculpting tool.
<b>Sculpt. Display</b>	Displays the result of the sculpting.
<b>Sculpt. Method</b>	Select between cutting a hole inside the volume, cutting away the outside of the volume or using the shave tool.
<b>Stitchline</b>	Turns stitchline on and off.
<b>Undo Label</b>	Remove the most recent label from the 3D volume.
<b>Undo Measure</b>	Remove the most recent measurement from the 3D volume.
<b>Undo Sculpture</b>	Remove the most recent sculpture of the 3D volume.
<b>Volume</b>	Draw planimetry on each image to create a volume.
<b>Wireframe</b>	Turns the wireframe around the 3D volume on or off.



## Chapter 4

# Working with the Image

---

Depending on which system you have, you can work with an image (measuring, resizing, etc.) using:

- The trackball and its **Select** keys to select or click and drag.
- The keyboard.

### Selecting the Imaging Plane

If you are using a transducer with more than one plane, you can select the imaging plane (**T** for transverse, **S** for sagittal, or **E** for endfire). The current imaging plane (**T**, **S**, or **E**) is displayed at the top of the monitor next to the transducer name.

#### To select the imaging plane:

- Press the appropriate button on the transducer. For details, see the user guide for the transducer

or

- Click **T**, **S**, or **E** in the workspace

or

- Press the **Scanning Plane**  key

**NOTE:** When you change image orientation U/D, you may need to adjust the TGC settings for the 2D image. See “TGC” on page 71.

### Freezing the Image

When you press the **Freeze** key, all images on the monitor are frozen and a snowflake appears on the monitor. If you press **Freeze** again, the image returns to its previous state.

**NOTE:** Some functions are not available when the image is frozen and some are available **only** when the image is frozen. If a control you want to use is dimmed (indicating that it is unavailable), try freezing or unfreezing the image.

When you freeze the image, the date and time displayed on the monitor are also frozen, so the time displayed on a printed image is the time the image was frozen, not the time it was printed.

### Partial Freeze and the Update Key

You can only do a partial freeze when you are imaging in Doppler mode as well as one or more 2D modes (B-mode, color, and power) – duplex or triplex imaging. In partial freeze, *either* the Doppler image *or* the 2D-mode image is frozen. You can toggle between the two images in a partial freeze.

### To start partial freeze:

- Press the **Update** key.  
The partial freeze state starts with all 2D-modes frozen and Doppler mode imaging.

While the partial freeze is active, press the **Update** key to toggle the display between the 2 states, which are

- Doppler mode frozen; 2D-modes imaging.
- 2D-modes frozen; Doppler mode imaging.

### To unfreeze both views:

- Long press the **Update** key.

## Split Screen

You can split the screen horizontally or vertically to display 2 views side by side or one over the other.

- If you are using a single-plane transducer, the 2 views contain the same imaging view.
- If you are using a biplane transducer, each view displays the image from one imaging plane.
- If simultaneous imaging is turned on, both views can be imaging.

### To split the screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.

### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

### To remove a split:

- Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.

## Simultaneous Imaging

The 2 views in a split screen can both be imaging simultaneously; in this case, freezing and unfreezing affect both images.

### To turn simultaneous imaging on and off:

- Click **Live Dual**.

**NOTE:** *In simultaneous split-screen imaging, only one of the views can contain Color or Power mode. Therefore, if one view has 2D+Color or 2D+Power, the other view contains only a 2D image.*

You can save a simultaneous split setup (which image is in which part of the monitor) as part of a preset.



## Linked Dual

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting on all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers the parameters from screen A to screen B (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

### To use Linked Dual:

- 1 Adjust the image parameters in screen A, then click screen B to transfer the parameters.
- 2 Use the same method to transfer the parameters from screen B to screen A.

### To disable Linked Dual:

- Click **Linked Dual**.

**NOTE:** *The functionality of the Linked Dual button can be saved as part of a preset. This allows the user to add or remove the button from the GUI as desired.*

**NOTE:** *In Linked Dual imaging, only one of the views can contain Color or Power mode. Therefore, if one view has 2D+Color or 2D+Power, the other view contains only a 2D image.*

## Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

In addition to annotating an image during an examination, you can add annotations (labels, bodymarks, and arrows) to archived images and to individual frames of archived clips from the same type of ultrasound system.

**NOTE:** *Labels and bodymarks change color when being manipulated. When the cursor hovers over them, they are orange. They are green when you are able to move them. When in position and the cursor is not nearby, they are white.*

## Labels

Labels provide a practical way to identify or explain an image. You can:

- Place text labels anywhere on the ultrasound image.
- Add more than one label to an image.
- Type labels directly on the image or select a pre-defined label. When you type, labels are auto-completed from the list of pre-defined labels.
- Change the label to have the opposite orientation word (right/left, up/down, upper/lower, anterior/posterior).
- Add an arrow to denote a specific area of interest.

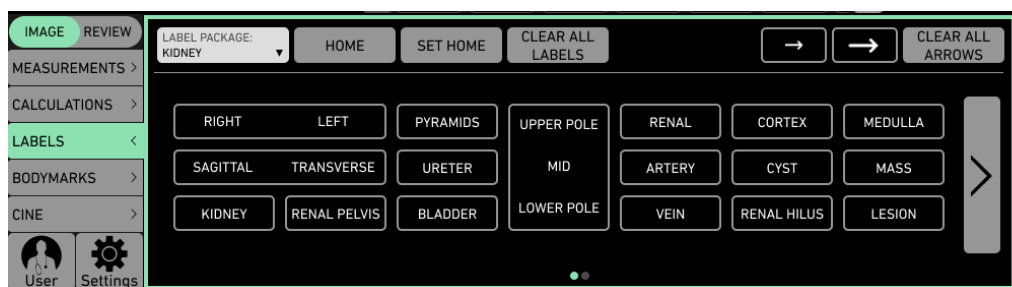


Figure 4-1. Workspace with Labels selector

### To select a label:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click on the arrow button to the right of the label selector to see more labels.
- 4 Select the label by clicking it. The label appears on the image.
- 5 Click on the label. The label turns green.
- 6 Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

*You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place.*

### Linked labels:

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are located on the same background. See *Fig 4-1*.

### Type and edit your own labels:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.
- 2 Click on the label to set it on the image.

### To move a label that you have already positioned:

- Click it and drag it to the new position. Click again when the label is where you want it.

### To remove a label:

- Click the label name in the label selector. The label will disappear from the image.

### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

### To edit a label on the image:

- Click the label on the image and type the changes you want. Note that you can only edit your own labels.

## Bodymarks

Bodymarks are small bitmaps depicting parts of the body. You can place a bodymark anywhere on the ultrasound image.

An imaging plane indicator can be placed on the bodymark to show the imaging position.

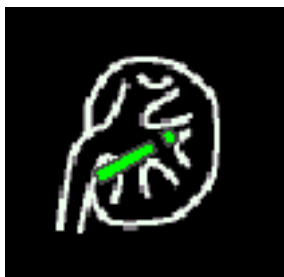


Figure 4-2. Bodymark with imaging plane indicator.

The imaging plane indicator consists of a long bar and small square. The orientation of the bar indicates the orientation of the transducer on the body, and the square indicates the part of the transducer that corresponds to the upper left of the image on the monitor.

## Using Bodymarks



Figure 4-3. Bodymarks selector.

### To place a bodymark on the image:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click to select the bodymark you want. (Click on the arrow button to the right of the bodymark selector to see more bodymarks.)

The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.

- 4 Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.
- 5 Use the trackball to select and move the bodymark and then click when it is in the correct position.

### To move a bodymark:

- 1 Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2 Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

### To replace a bodymark:

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

### To delete a bodymark from the monitor:

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

## Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator

### To adjust the imaging plane indicator:

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1 Drag the imaging plan indicator with the trackball.
- 2 Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3 Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

## Arrows

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

### To place an arrow on the image:

- 1 Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2 Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.
- 3 Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.
- 4 You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

## Cine

Cine (image review) lets you review a series of the most recently recorded 2D, 2D+Color mode, 2D+M-mode, or 2D+Doppler mode images.

Freeze the image and *turn* the **B-Mode** key to scroll backward or forward through the series.

Images are constantly being saved and stored for review. When storage capacity is reached, the oldest images are discarded as new ones are stored. The number of images that can be stored for review varies, depending on such factors as image resolution and size.

Images in a clip must be comparable. Therefore, changing certain parameters that affect the image will cause already-stored images to be discarded. If this happens, there will not be a full set of images to be reviewed until the storage has had time to fill again.

You can change some of the settings for the **CINE** function.

## Using Cine

### To use the Cine function:

- Freeze the image and turn the **B-Mode** key to scroll backward or forward through the series, or
- Use the **Cine** buttons to navigate through the frames by moving one frame forward or backward.

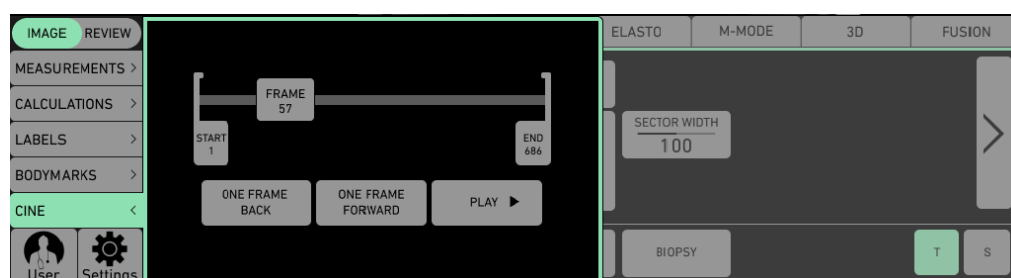


Figure 4-4. Cine indicators.

**NOTE:** The most recent image is the highest number. In Fig 4-4, the frame indicator shows that frame #57 of 686 frames is being displayed. The lower the number, the “older” the frame.

### Cine Start and End Markers

You can set the Start and End markers to indicate the range of images to be displayed in **Cine Play**. These markers are shown in Fig 4-4.

- Freeze the image and scroll back through the frames using **Cine** buttons.
- Select the **Start** marker by clicking on it, holding down the select key, and using the trackball to move the marker.
- Release the select key to set the Start marker. The frame number is shown by below the word **Start**.
- Select the **End** marker by clicking on it, holding down the select key, and using the trackball to move the marker.
- Release the select key to set the **End** marker. The frame number is shown by below the word **End**.

During **Cine Play**, the image with the lowest frame number (oldest) is displayed first, followed by images with increasing frame numbers (newer). The current frame is displayed below **Frame**. After the newest image has been displayed, **Cine Play** will begin to play the loop again, starting with the lowest frame number.

## Using Cine in M-Mode or Doppler Mode

When cine is activated while imaging in M-mode or Doppler mode, a vertical cine cursor is displayed overlaying the Doppler or M-mode image.

The 2D image displayed is always the one that corresponds to the position of the Doppler or M-mode cursor. The image (frame) number in the **Frame** indicator corresponds to the 2D image.

### To make measurements on a cine image or save it:

- 1 When the desired image is displayed, click the **Pause** button.
- 2 Make measurements on the image or save it in the usual way.

**NOTE:** *When you move a cine image after you make a measurement, the measurement result remains, but the markers disappear (because the underlying image is different).*

# Chapter 5

## Making Measurements

---

### Measurements and Calculations

Each Exam Type contains the measuring tools that you need for the calculations contained in the exam type. You use these tools to measure different aspects of the ultrasound image (and thus the underlying tissue); these measurements are used for various calculations.

You have two options for making measurements, **Measurements** and **Calculations**. Measurements are generic measurements that you can do on any region of interest. Calculations are predefined measurements intended for measuring organs or ROIs within a particular preset.

You can make measurements on stored images from the same type of ultrasound system. The images must be in DICOM format, not .bmp. For information about the format of stored images, see “HIPAA Compliance and Exporting Data” on page 62. You cannot make measurements on video clips.

For calculation formulas and information about the accuracy of different types of measurements, see “Clinical Measurements: Ranges and Accuracies” in the *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* and the Technical Data (BZ2100).

#### To view the list of measurements:

- 1 Freeze the image.

In the workspace, click **Measurements**. The Measurements selector window opens.

## Making a Measurement – General Procedure

The following sections contain detailed descriptions for using the various measuring tools.

### To make a measurement:

- 1 Click on the **Measurements** tab in the left side of the workspace.
- 2 Click the name of the measurement.  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 3 Drag the caliper to the position you want and click.  
If the measurement requires 2 calipers, another one appears.
- 4 Drag the second caliper to the position you want and click.
- 5 Repeat this until you have positioned all the calipers for the measurement.

**NOTE:** *The look of the calipers themselves and of any lines that connect them depend on what you are measuring.*

### What the Measurements Indicate

- **Results** – The results of the measurement are displayed (continuously updated) on the monitor.
- **Depth** – While you are positioning the first caliper for a distance measurement in a 2D or Color mode image, the displayed measurement is the depth of the caliper (distance from the caliper to the transducer surface along the scan line). When a second caliper is positioned, the depth is replaced by the appropriate measurement result.

### Clearing a Measurement

#### To clear a measurement

- 1 Point at the colored square next to the measurement to the left of the image.  
A trash can icon appears.
- 2 Click on the trash can icon.

## 2D and Color Mode Measuring Tools

This section describes how to make the following types of measurements:

- Distance
- Angle
- Hip Tool
- Circle
- Ellipse
- Freehand drawing of shapes
- Curved Distance



## Distance Measuring Tool

Two calipers can be positioned to measure a distance, for example, the length or width of a structure. When the first caliper is positioned, a second one appears for you to position.

**NOTE:** Pressing the **Measure** key starts a distance measurement.

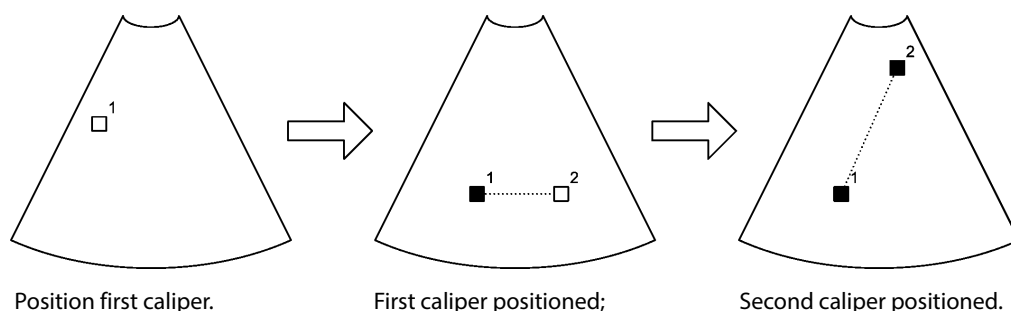


Figure 5-1. Positioning 2 calipers on a 2D or Color mode image.

**NOTE:** The small numbers (1 and 2) shown in Fig 5-1 indicate the order in which the calipers appear. The numbers do not appear like this on the monitor.

### To move a caliper after they have all been positioned:

- 1 Click any caliper and move it to change the length or orientation of the line.
- 2 Click again to set the measurement.

### To move the entire measurement after positioning:

- 1 Click the line and drag it to the new position.
- 2 Click again to set the measurement.

## Angle Measuring Tool

On a 2D or Color mode image, you can measure angles.

### To measure an angle:

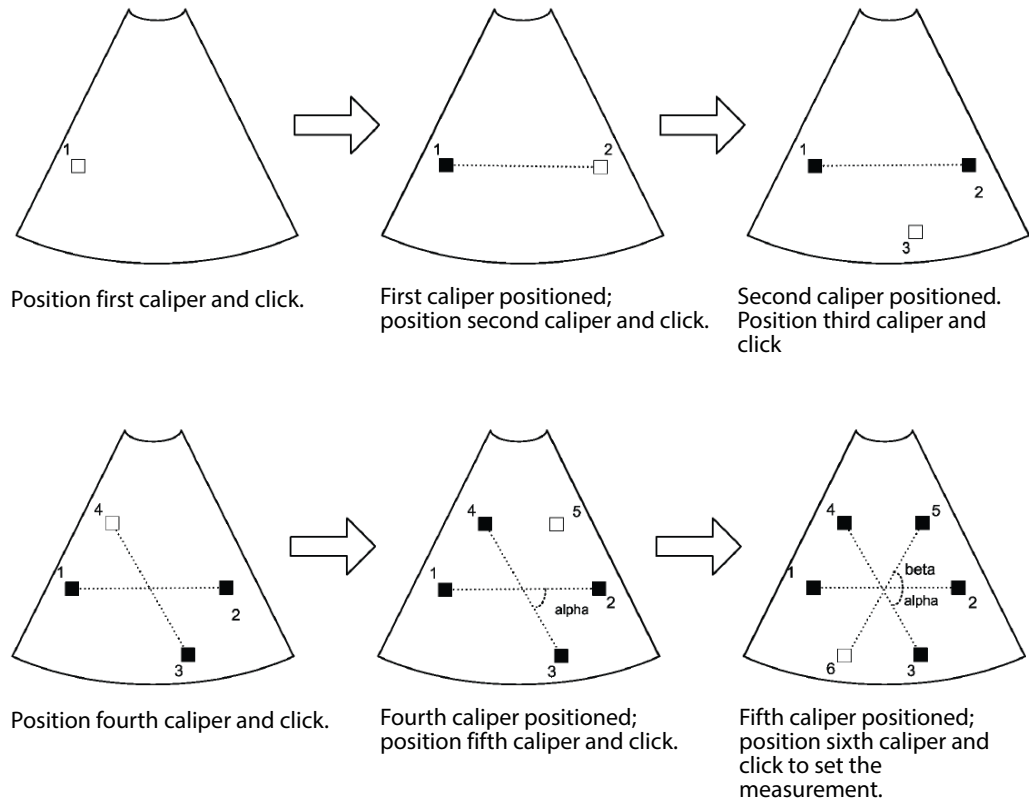
- 1 Click **Angle**.  
A caliper appears.
- 2 Position the caliper and click.  
A second caliper appears, with a line connecting the two calipers.
- 3 Position caliper 2 to change the angle of the line. Click.  
A third caliper appears.
- 4 Position caliper 3 and click.  
A fourth caliper appears, with a line connecting it to caliper 3.
- 5 Position caliper 4 to change the angle of the line. Click.  
Angle **alpha** between the two lines is indicated on the image, and the size of the angle appears as a measurement to the left of the image.

**To change the angle measurement after all the lines are positioned:**

- 1 Click any caliper and move it to change the length or orientation of one of the lines.
- 2 Click again to set the measurement.

**Hip Tool Measuring Tool**

The hip tool measuring tool works slightly different from the other measuring tools, but in general as the angle tool described above. There are, however, three lines and thereby two angles to measure.



*Figure 5-2. Using the Hip Tool to measure two angles.*

**To use the Hip Tool:**

- 1 Click **Hip Tool**.  
A caliper appears.
- 2 Position the caliper and click.  
A second caliper appears, with a line connecting the two calipers.
- 3 Position caliper 2 to change the angle of the line. Click to place the second caliper.  
A third caliper appears.
- 4 Position caliper 3 and click.  
A fourth caliper appears, with a line connecting it to caliper 3.

- 5 Position caliper 4 to change the angle of the line. Click to place the fourth caliper. Angle **alpha** between the two lines is indicated on the image, and the size of the angle appears as a measurement to the left of the image. Caliper 5 appears.
- 6 Position caliper 5 and click. Caliper 6 appears, with a line connecting it to caliper 5.
- 7 Position caliper 6 to change the angle of the line. Click to place the sixth caliper. Angle **beta** between the first and last lines is indicated on the image, and the size of the angle appears as a measurement to the left of the image.

If you just click and do not move any calipers, the default angles are 60°.

**To change the hip tool measurement after all the lines are positioned:**

- 1 Click any caliper and move it to change the length or orientation of any of the lines.
- 2 Click again to set the measurement.

**Circle Measuring Tool**

On a 2D or Color mode image, you can position 2 calipers to measure a circle. Use the **Ellipse** measure. Position the calipers in the usual way. As you move the second caliper, the ellipse is continuously redrawn on the monitor.

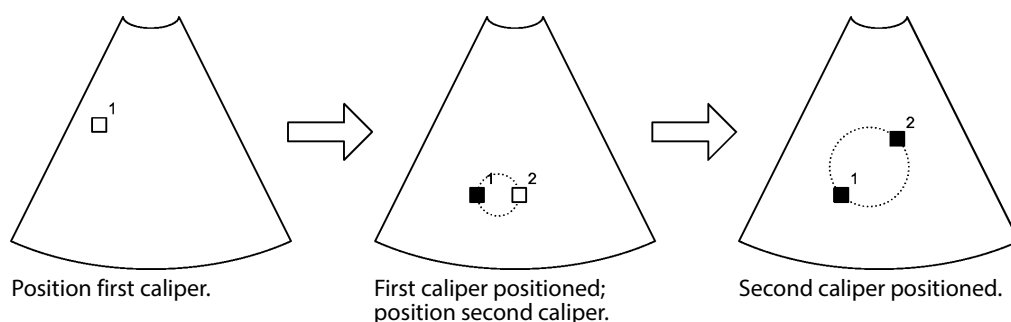


Figure 5-3. Using the ellipse measuring tool.

After the calipers have been positioned, you can move any of them by clicking and dragging to a new location. Click again.

**To change the location or size of the circle:**

- 1 Click one of the calipers
- 2 Reposition the caliper.
- 3 Repeat with the other caliper, if necessary.

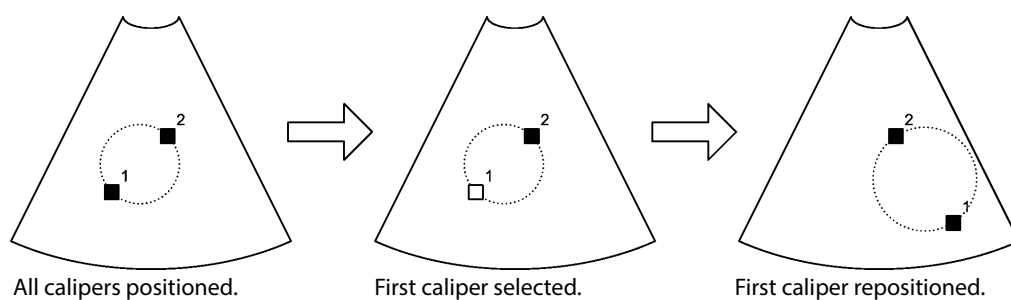


Figure 5-4. Repositioning one of the circle calipers.

**To move the entire circle without changing its size:**

- 1 Click inside or on the circle.

A symbol (a plus sign with arrows) appears as shown in the center image of Fig 5-5. This symbol means you can move the circle.

- 2 Drag it.
- 3 Click again.

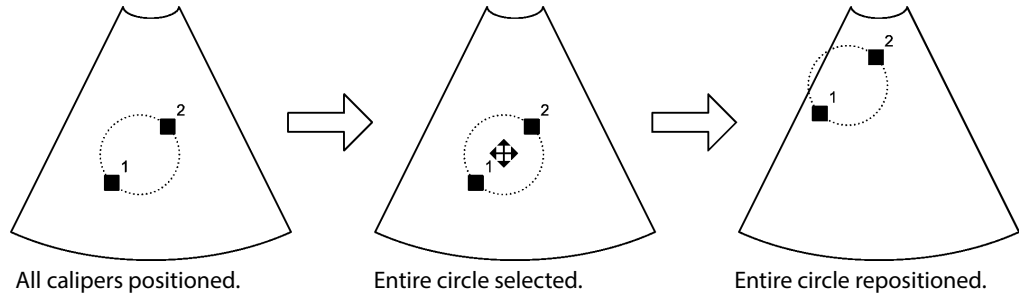


Figure 5-5. Moving an entire circle without changing its size.

**Ellipse Measuring Tool**

On a 2D or Color mode image, you can use three calipers to measure an ellipse. Position the calipers in the usual way.

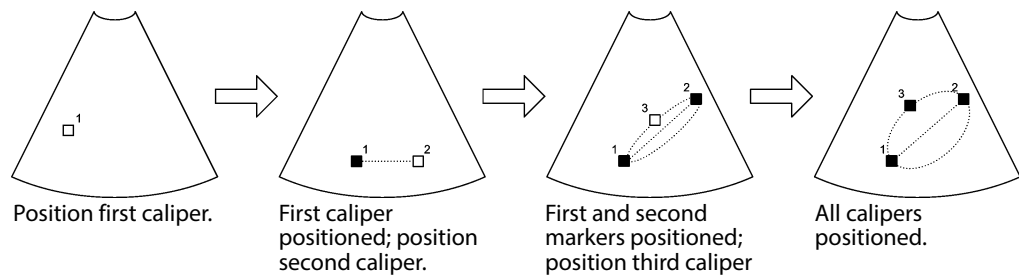
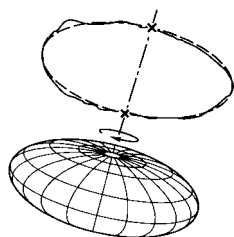


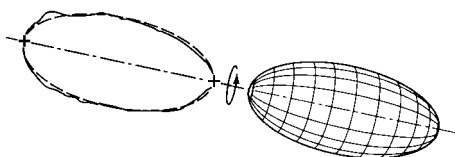
Figure 5-6. Drawing an ellipse.

The first 2 calipers determine a line that is used as the axis of rotation if you use the ellipse to measure volume.

**NOTE:** The axis of rotation critically affects the calculated volume. Consider the basic shape of the structure of interest and make sure to place the first 2 calipers so that they define the correct axis of rotation. See Fig 5-7.



Using the shorter distance as axis of rotation results in an estimated volume of the shape shown here.



Using the longer distance as axis of rotation results in an estimated volume of the shape shown here.

Figure 5-7. The effect of the rotation axis on volume determination.

The third caliper is always equidistant from the first 2. Moving it makes the ellipse broader or narrower. As you move the third caliper, the ellipse is continuously redrawn on the monitor.

After the calipers have been positioned, you can move any of them by clicking and dragging to a new position.

**To move the entire ellipse without changing its size or orientation:**

- 1 Click inside or on the ellipse.  
The move symbol – plus sign with arrows – appears as shown in the center image of Fig. 5-8. This symbol means you can move the ellipse.
- 2 Drag it.
- 3 Click again to set the ellipse.

Not all of the ellipse has to lie within the ultrasound image.

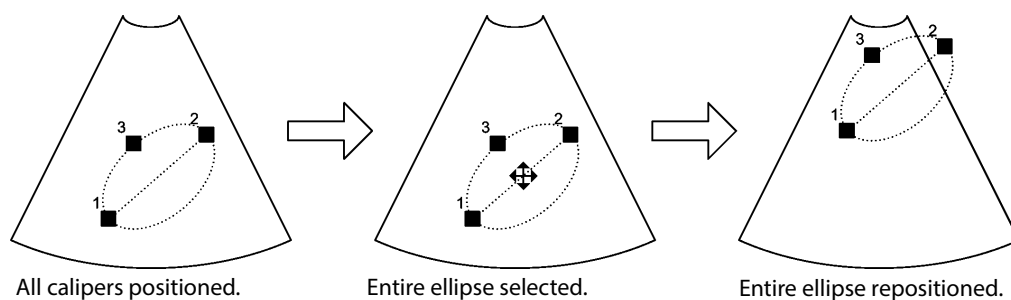


Figure 5-8. Moving an ellipse.

**Freehand Drawing on a 2D or Color Mode Image**

On a 2D or Color mode image, you can draw a closed shape freehand.

**To draw freehand:**

- 1 Click **2D Trace**:

A caliper appears.

- 2 Drag it to where you want to start drawing. Click.

A drawing cursor appears where you clicked.

- 3 Drag it to draw the shape you want.

To delete backward from the cursor, press - on the +/- key. The cursor is automatically moved back. To undo the deletion, press +.

- 4 When you have finished drawing, click the drawing cursor.

The shape is automatically closed by a straight line from the drawing caliper to the first caliper (starting point).

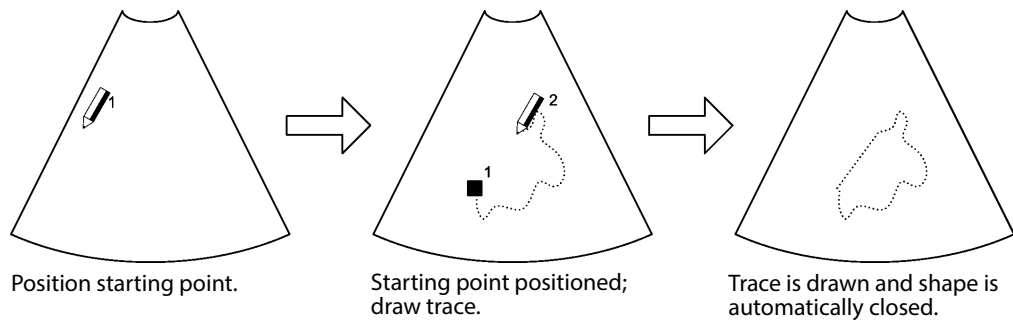


Figure 5-9. Drawing a freehand shape.

#### You can move the shape to any location in the view:

- 1 Click inside or on the shape.

The shape turns green and a symbol (plus sign with arrows) appears as shown in the center image of Fig. 5-10. This symbol means you can move the shape.

- 2 Drag it.

- 3 Click again to set the shape.

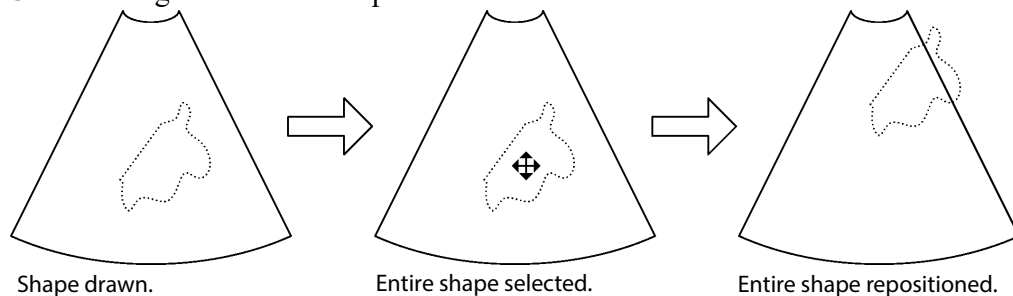


Figure 5-10. Moving a shape you have drawn freehand.

#### Curved Distance

On a 2D or Color mode image, you can measure a curved distance.

##### To measure a curved distance:

- 1 Click **Curveddist**:

A caliper appears.

- 2 Drag it to where you want to start drawing. Click.

A drawing cursor appears where you clicked.

- 3 Drag it to draw the curve you want.

To delete backward from the cursor, press - on the +/- key. The cursor is automatically moved back. To undo the deletion, press +.

- 4 When you have finished drawing, click the drawing cursor to set the measurement.

## Doppler Mode Measuring Tools

Making measurements on a Doppler mode image is different from measuring on a 2D or Color mode image because the Doppler mode image has *time* as a dimension. To avoid getting a negative result, successive calipers must be positioned to the right, not the left, of any already-positioned calipers.

Note that the **Angle Correct** button is available when you click **Measurements** or **Calculations** in Doppler mode.

### Positioning 2 Point Calipers on a Doppler Mode Image

While you are positioning a caliper, 2 cursor lines are displayed. One is horizontal and one vertical, intersecting at the marker position.

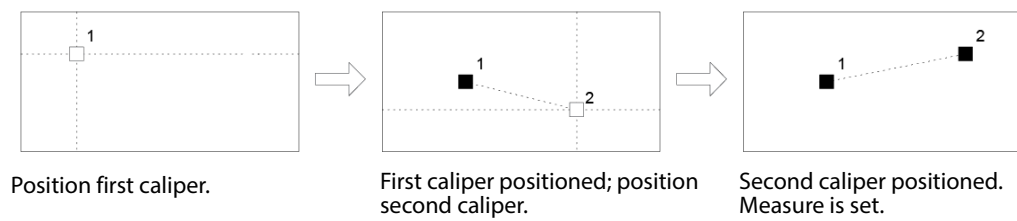


Figure 5-11. Positioning 2 point calipers on a Doppler mode image.

After you position the calipers, you can move one of them by clicking and dragging it. Click again if you want to reposition the second caliper and click when you are done positioning.

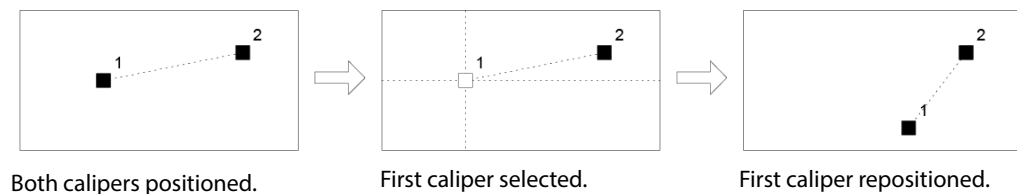


Figure 5-12. Moving a caliper you have placed on a Doppler mode image.

You can position the calipers anywhere in the Doppler mode image.

The appearance of the calipers and whether they are connected by a dotted line depends on what you are measuring.

### Positioning 1 Point Caliper on a Doppler Mode Image

If you are measuring something that needs only one caliper, position the caliper in the same way as for 2 calipers.

## Positioning 2 Vertical Line Calipers on a Doppler Mode Image

Two vertical line calipers can be positioned on a Doppler mode image to measure intervals.

### To position the vertical calipers:

- 1 Click the **HR** measuring tool.  
A line caliper appears on the image.
- 2 Drag this to the position you want. Click.  
Another line caliper appears.
- 3 Drag it to the correct position. Click.

The measurement is set.

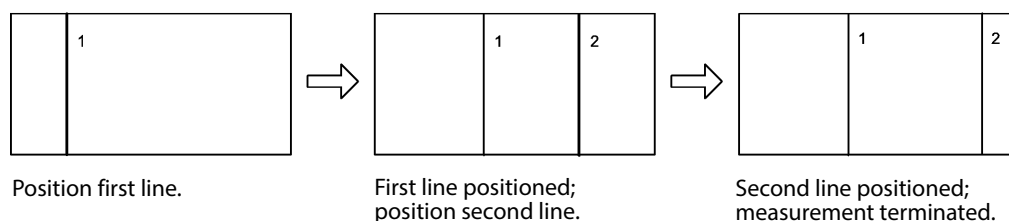


Figure 5-13. Positioning vertical calipers on a Doppler mode image.

After you position the calipers, you can move one of them by clicking it and dragging it. Click again when you have positioned it where you want it.

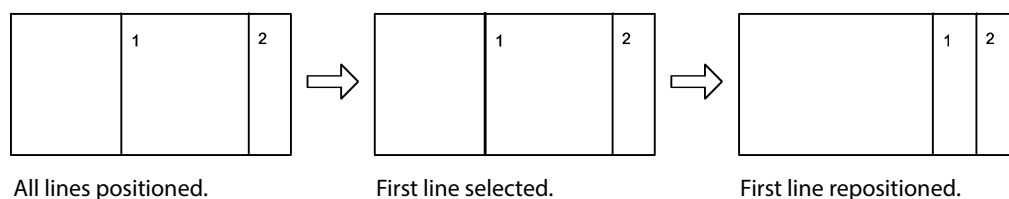


Figure 5-14. Moving a vertical line caliper you have placed on a Doppler mode image.

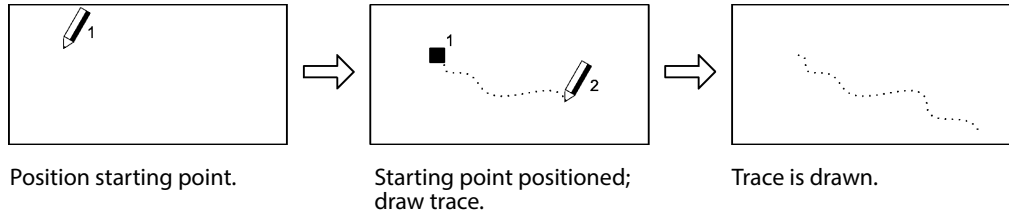
## Drawing an Outline Curve on a Doppler Mode Image

On a Doppler mode image, you can draw an outline curve freehand.

### To draw freehand:

- 1 Click the **D Trace Freehand** measuring tool on the monitor:  
A caliper appears.
- 2 Drag it to where you want to start drawing. Click.  
A drawing cursor appears where you clicked.
- 3 Drag the drawing cursor to draw the shape you want. (You can only drag to the right; you cannot drag to the left.)  
To delete backward from the cursor, press - on the +/- key. The cursor is automatically moved back. To undo the deletion, press +.
- 4 When you have finished drawing, click the drawing cursor.





*Figure 5-15. Drawing a freehand curve on a Doppler image.*



# Chapter 6

## Documentation

---

### What are Documents?

This chapter describes ways to save, view, and delete documents.

There are four different types of documents:

- Images (2D and 3D)
- Clips
- 3D data sets
- Reports

In this chapter, the term “document” refers to all of these types of documents unless a particular type is specified.

### HIPAA Compliance

HIPAA (the American Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996) sets standards for handling patient data and medical records in a way that ensures the privacy and security of all health-care related data. Each hospital or office must set up procedures to make sure that all information that identifies an individual remains confidential and safe. Always follow the procedures that have been established for your workplace.

Information relating to HIPAA compliance can be found in the various parts of this chapter:

- “HIPAA Compliance and Exporting Data” on page 62
- “Deleting Documents or Exams from the System.” on page 64
- “Password Protection of Patient Data” on page 65

### Saving Documents – Capturing Images and Video Clips

You must have a patient ID entered in order to capture images and clips. Normally, the Patient ID field will be populated with a date/timestamp, but you can enter a specific ID before you start the exam if you want to.

#### Capturing Images

When you have started the exam, press the **Capture** key to capture an image. If the image is frozen, the **Capture** key will capture an image. If the image is not frozen, the **Capture** key will record a clip. While a clip is being captured, a progress wheel is displayed in the document browser. If you press **Capture** and an exam is not running, the system returns you to the **Patient Details** where you can start the exam by clicking **Start Exam**.

## Reviewing Documents

### The Document Browser

Use the document browser at the bottom of the monitor to review images and clips from the current exam.

The document browser contains numbered thumbnails of the available documents. If the browser contains more images than can be displayed on the monitor, arrows appear at each end of the line of thumbnails.

#### To view a document:

- 1 Click the document in the browser.  
A green frame with a 'Close' label appears on the selection and the document is displayed on the monitor.
- 2 Click the document again to close it.

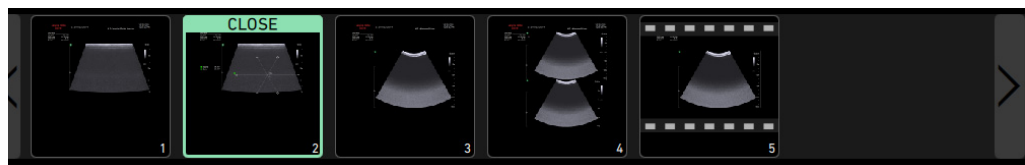


Figure 6-1. The document browser

### The Review Window

Use the **Review** window to review and manage images and other documents stored in the patient list. For saved exams, open the documents on the **Patient List** by double-clicking the examination you want to view.

#### To change the order of the saved images in the active exam:

- 1 Click **Change Order**.
- 2 Click and drag the image to where you want it.  
The image changes position in the **Review** window and the document browser (when the image is not frozen).

#### To join video clips:

- 1 Click **Multiselect**.
- 2 Click the video clips you want to join.
- 3 Click **Join Clips**.

The system displays a message to indicate that the clips are being joined, and the new video clip is added at the end.

You can view the documents on the monitor or you can export or delete them. Select a document to view or one or more documents to export or delete.

In the same way, you can also review examinations from a **USB**.

## Viewing and Editing Video Clips

### Viewing and Editing a Video Clip on the System

When you view a video clip, edit buttons appear in a box in the workspace, so that you can play, pause, go forward one frame, go back one frame, or edit the clip.

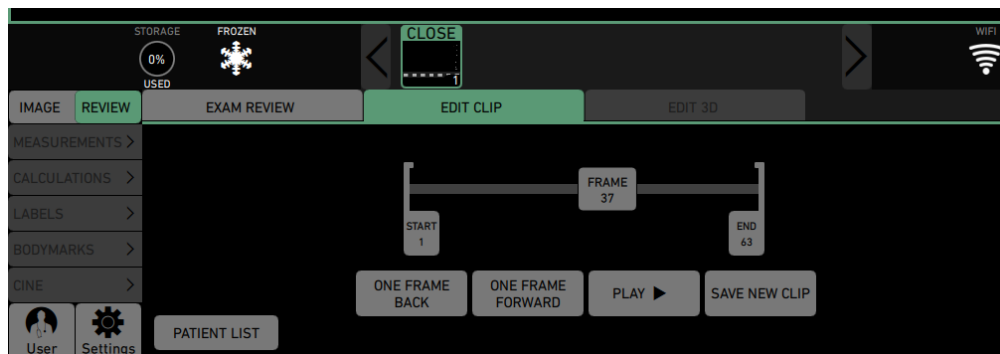


Figure 6-2. Video editing buttons

#### To edit a video clip:

- 1 Click **Pause** to pause the video. The button changes text to **Play**.
- 2 Use the Start marker and End Marker to scroll through the frames to find your preferred start frame and end frame. See “Cine Start and End Markers” on page 45.
- 3 Click **Save New Clip** to save the clip with new start and end frames.

## Viewing Exported Documents on the System

Documents that have been exported to external storage media can be viewed on an ultrasound system.

#### To view externally stored documents:

- 1 Use a network drive or insert a USB with a storage device into the USB connector on the left side of the keyboard.
- 2 In the **Review** window, click the **USB** or **Network Drive** tab.  
A list of the folders on the external storage device appears.
- 3 Click the folder you want to view.

The Review window displays the documents in the selected folder.

## Viewing Exported Documents on an External Computer

### Formats of Exported Documents

**Copied Images** Images copied to a network drive or USB storage device are stored in DICOM or PNG format. In PNG format, they are labeled with a code that specifies the date and time the image was captured. For example, 2D\_20191022\_135426\_FV12345.png would be the label on an 2D image of patient FV12345 that was captured on October 22, 2019 at 1:54:26 P.M. (13:54:26). The label on a DICOM file is the same except that the file extension is .dcm.

**Copied Video Clips** Video clips can be copied in AVI, MPEG, or DICOM format.

**Stored Images and Video Clips** Stored images and video clips are stored in DICOM format.

### Viewing Images on a Computer

**NOTE:** *DICOM format requires a DICOM viewer on your computer.*

Copied images have been exported in DICOM or PNG format. You select the file you want to view.

### Viewing Video Clips on a Computer

If the video clip has been exported in DICOM format, you can view it with a DICOM viewer. Otherwise, you can use a media player on your computer.

## Exporting Data

### HIPAA Compliance and Exporting Data

To preserve patient confidentiality when you copy patient data, select the option to copy images and other documents to a USB storage device *without the identifying patient information*: **De-identify patient ID**.

### Exporting Documents

You can copy documents associated with a patient to a USB storage device, PACS, or a network drive from the review window. When you click **Export**, you can select where to export data to, image format, clip format, and whether or not you want to export the documents without identifying the patient information.

#### To copy an examination:

- 1 Click **Review**.
- 2 Click **Patient List**.
- 3 Select the patient, whose examination you want to copy.
- 4 Click **Export**.
- 5 Select the destination, format, and patient data identification and click **Export** again. **De-identify patient ID** is recommended for patient security.
- 6 The data is copied to the selected destination.

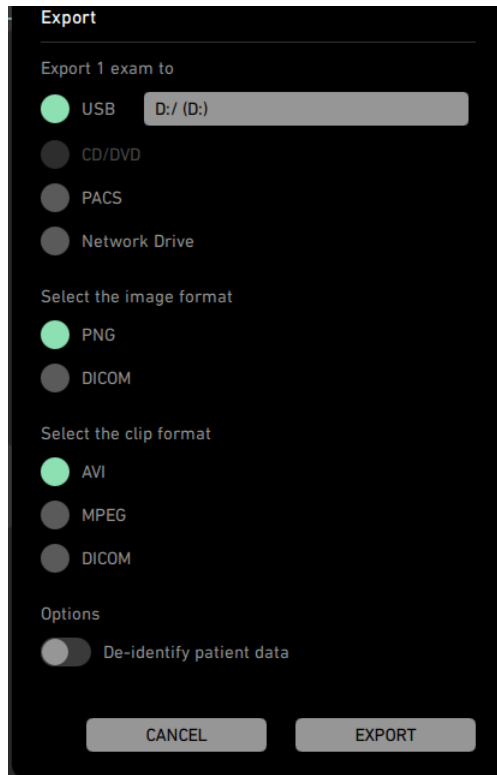


Figure 6-3. Export options

You can make more than one copy of a document.

**NOTE:** Do not delete documents from the local patient list system until you have verified that they have been exported successfully to the selected destination.

## Patient List

The **Patient List** contains patient IDs, names, and other information about patients in the patient database, including the date of the last examination.

When you capture an image or save a document during an examination, it is saved directly into the patient list. The document browser is automatically updated to show the saved documents from the current examination.

You can search through the patient list using the search field above the list.

You can sort the listed patients according to the information in one of the columns by clicking the column heading. For example, if you click the **Last Name** column, the listed patients will be sorted alphabetically by last name.

To see documents from a particular examination, double-click the row containing the examination. To continue a previous exam, click the relevant row and select **Append Exam**.

From the **Patient List** you can also export (see “Exporting Documents” above) and delete exams. You can select more than one by clicking the **Select Multiple** or **Select All** buttons.

**NOTE:** *The patient archiving system can be password-protected. See “Password Protection of Patient Data” on page 65.*

## Deleting Documents or Exams from the System.

You can delete documents and patient records from the system.

**NOTE:** *You cannot delete a document that is in a queue to be sent to a DICOM device.*

### To delete one or more documents from the system:

- 1 Double-click the examination on the **Patient List**.
- 2 Select one or several documents (Use the **Multiselect** button).
- 3 Click **Delete** and confirm that you want to delete the document(s).  
The selected documents are deleted.

### To delete all documents associated with an examination:

- 1 Double-click the examination on the **Patient List**.
- 2 Click **Select All**.
- 3 Click **Delete** and confirm that you want to delete the documents.  
The documents associated with the selected examination are deleted.

**NOTE:** *The examination record itself is never deleted (unless you delete the patient).*

### To delete an exam:

- 1 Click the examination on the **Patient List**.
- 2 Click **Delete**.  
You are asked to confirm that you want to delete the exam.
- 3 Click **Yes**.  
All local documents for the exam are deleted.

### To delete the entire Patient List:

See “General Tab” on page 262 in the Setup and Customizing section.

## Pausing and Later Resuming an Examination

It is possible to pause an exam (for example, while you examine a different patient) and then resume the exam with the first patient.

### To pause an examination:

- Press the **Patient** key.
- Click **Pause Exam**.

### To resume a paused examination:

- 1 Press the **Patient** key.
- 2 Select the **Paused Exams** tab.
- 3 Select the exam you want to resume and click **Resume Exam**.



## Password Protection of Patient Data

To help comply with HIPAA standards, the patient archive database on the system can be password-protected with a user-specific ID (username) and password.

If the database on the system is password-protected, when you turn on the system, a login window appears:

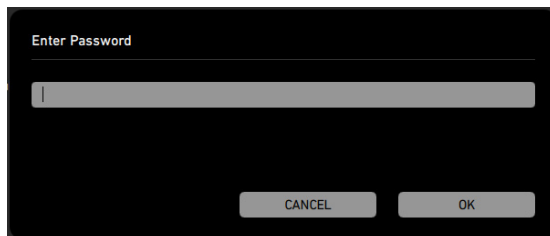


Figure 6-4. Login window.

Select user, enter password, and click **OK**.

## Hard Disk Quota

The system hard disk does not have unlimited storage capacity.

The system checks the space on the hard disk each time you enter a new patient ID. If the hard disk is getting full, you will be notified:

- when there is less than 2 GB available space on the hard disk.
- when there is less than 1.5 GB available on the hard disk.
- when there is less than 1 GB available on the hard disk. At this point, you will not be allowed to save any more information to the hard disk.

To clear space on the hard disk, you must delete some documents. You can archive them to a network drive or PACS (if you have DICOM installed) before you delete them from the hard disk. See “Exporting Documents” on page 62.

## Reports

Reports are defined for each Preset. A report contains information about the patient and the measurements you have made. You can add assessment, images, patient history, and comments to a report.

You can save a report to the patient database and view, save, or export it in the same way as you view or save other documents. See above for more information.

## Creating a Report

### To create a report:

- 1 Click **Exam Review** on the **Review** tab.
- 2 Click **Report**. The **Report** window is displayed.

The contents of the report will vary, depending on the Preset and the measurements you have made.

If the finished report has more than one page, click the arrows to navigate through the pages.

Patient comments are included in a report. You can also add additional remarks.

### Adding Measurements to a Report

- Click the **Measurements** tab to see the measurements you have saved for this patient.  
Measurements are automatically added to the report.

### Assessment

- Click the **Assessment** tab and use the toggle buttons to note your assessments. You are able to **Check All**, and then un-check the toggle buttons for non-relevant assessments.

### Adding Images to a Report

Store images are automatically added to the report but you can select which images you want to include.

- 3 Click **Images**.
- 4 Select the images you want to include in the report.
- 5 Click **Preview**.  
Only your selected images are added to the report. In the preview, you can select **Image Size**.

### Adding Patient History

- 6 Click **Patient**.
- 7 Use the keyboard to type your notes into the fields, and use the dropdown menus for additional information.

**NOTE:** *You only get individual pages under **Patient** if you have made calculations in these areas. For example, you will not see the page **Kidney Patient History** if you have made no calculations of the kidneys,*

## Editing a Report

You can edit a report before you save it.

### To delete or edit a measurement from a report:

- 1 On the **Measurements** tab, scroll down until you reach the measurements taken.

- 2 Click the measurement you want to edit.
- 3 Use the keyboard to edit or delete the measurement.

The measurement is updated. In this way, you can edit all information in the report on the individual tabs until you end the exam.

## Preview the Report

### To preview a report:

- 1 In the **Report** window, click **Preview**. The first page is displayed on the monitor.
- 2 Use the arrows below the report to see additional pages.

Click **Close** when you are done.

## Printing the Report

### To print a report:

- Press the **Print** key.
- or
- Click **Preview**, and then click **Print**.

The current page of the report is printed. If the report has more than one page, click **Next Page** or **Previous Page** to view other pages of the report and print them.

**NOTE:** *Reports can be saved as documents or captured as images but cannot be printed directly from the thumbnails. In either case, open the thumbnail to print from the monitor.*

## Saving a Report as Images

### To save the report as images:

- Click **Store Report Image** on the report. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Printing Documents or Images on the Monitor

You can print documents on a local printer or, if DICOM is installed on your system, send them to be printed on a DICOM printer. You can also set up an office printer on a network.

You cannot use an office printer directly with the USB connector on the system. The only printers you can connect directly to the system are ones listed as approved in the Product Data information. See also the Safety chapter in the *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide*.

## Printing Thumbnail Images

### To open a thumbnail image and then print it:

- 1 Click the thumbnail image in the document browser. The image is displayed on the monitor.
- 2 Press the **Print** key.

### Or if you are printing from the Patient List:

- 1 Click **Review**.
- 2 Click **Patient List**.
- 3 Double-click the exam you want to print images from.
- 4 Select the image you want to print.
- 5 Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

See Appendix E, “Configuring the bk3000 and bk5000” for more details.

## Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

### To print an image displayed on the monitor:

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

# Chapter 7

## Imaging Modes

---

### Imaging Modes

The bk3000 and bk5000 have various imaging modes.

- 2D (B-mode) gives real-time 2D information about the anatomical structure of soft tissues. Includes tissue harmonic imaging.
- Color mode (CFM, color flow mapping, color Doppler) ultrasound displays color-coded, real-time information about direction and velocity of flow in tissue.
- Power mode (power Doppler) ultrasound displays information about the number of particles moving, rather than their velocity.
- Doppler mode (spectral Doppler mode) imaging displays information about the spectrum of flow velocities as a function of time.
- Continuous Wave Doppler (CW Doppler) imaging is used to detect very high velocities in cardiac/echocardiography.
- M-mode (motion mode) ultrasound is produced by slowly sweeping one line of a 2D image across the monitor. The M-mode image illustrates a time series of images along this line.
- Contrast enhanced imaging involves injecting a contrast agent into the patient. The reflected ultrasound waves from the agent generates signals that are analyzed to create the contrast image.
- Elastography uses manual tissue compression or motion to evaluate tissue stiffness.

**NOTE:** *You cannot change imaging modes when the image is frozen.*

### Adjusting the Thermal Index Limit

Before you use the system, check that the TI settings are appropriate. The current TI tissue type and limit are displayed in the top left corner of the monitor.

The absolute TI limit for each tissue type is set by the factory to conform to FDA guidelines and international standards (AIUM/NEMA and IEC) (see the acoustic output section in the *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide*), but you may want to set a lower TI limit for some purposes. There are 2 types of settings you can vary:

- Tissue type (TIS – soft tissue, TIC – cranial, TIB – bone)
- TI limit (not exceeding the factory-set limits)

#### To select tissue type:

- Click **TI** type select **TIS**, **TIC**, or **TIB**.
- or
- Press the **+/-** key to toggle through the settings.

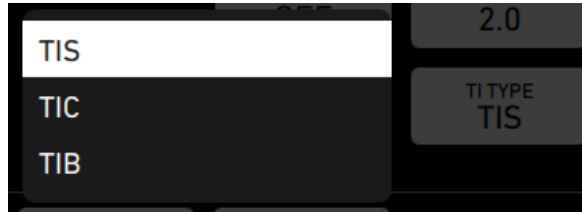


Figure 7-1. TI Type button.

**To adjust the TI limit:**

- Click **TI limit** and use the trackball to slide the TI scale button to adjust the limit.

## 2D (B-Mode)

### Focus

The ultrasound image is focused sharply within a selected zone. The bk3000 and bk5000 can use either a single focal zone or multiple (up to 3) focal zones (multiple focusing).

When more than one focal zone is active, ultrasound beams are focused at different depths in the tissue. This improves the focus in several zones. However, using more focal zones gives a lower frame rate. Thus using multiple focal zones when there is much tissue movement causes the image to be blurred.

The **Focus** indicator to the left of the image shows the extent (range) of the focal region as well as the point of best focus.

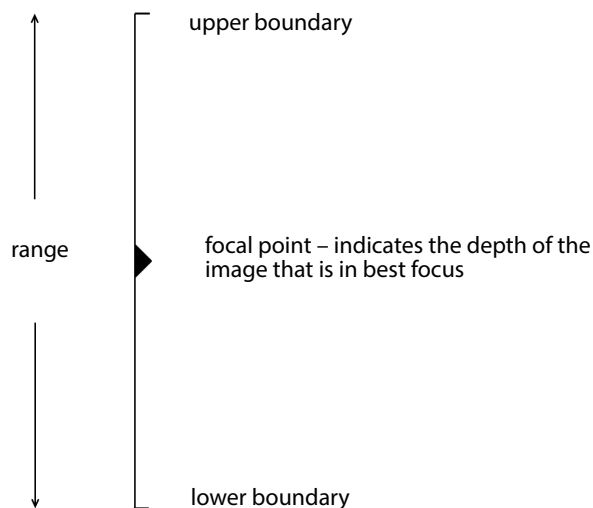


Figure 7-2. The Focus indicator.

The focal point triangle indicates the depth of the image that is in best focus – the focal point. If there is more than one focal point, the range automatically expands to display the improved range of focusing. The actual number of focus zones is not shown.

You can adjust the position and range of the area in best focus.

### To adjust focus position:

To move the focus up or down on the image, select the focus indicator and drag it vertically to the desired position on the image.

- 1 Select the **Focus** indicator by clicking on it or pressing the **Focus** key.
- 2 Drag the **Focus** indicator to the desired position.
- 3 Click.

### Tru-Focus

Selected transducers are equipped with Tru-Focus<sup>1</sup>. This focus enhancement gives you full focus in the entire depth of the image. With Tru-Focus, it is not possible to further adjust the focus position.

## Gain

You can control the overall gain of an imaging mode by turning the **B-mode** key.

### TGC

The TGC (Time Gain Compensation) curve determines variable amplification applied to echoes from different depths in the tissue. The TGC function compensates for attenuation and scattering of the ultrasound beam in the tissue.

When you select a transducer, if all TGC sliders are in the center position, imaging starts using a default TGC curve optimized for the transducer. (The default is either the one set at the factory or one you have set up yourself.)

The **TGC** sliders adjust the relative gain of the image at different tissue depths. Each slider adjusts a specific part (1/8th) of the TGC curve; the topmost control adjusts the top 1/8th of the image.

**NOTE:** *The sliders operate relative to their center position; when they are all centered, the default TGC is used.*

*However, resetting the gain to the default setting may change the relationship between the TGC sliders and the TGC curve.*

### To adjust the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve.

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line. This indicates the modification that is applied to the default TGC curve.

**NOTE:** *The TGC curve operates on the monitor image, not on the ultrasound echo. Therefore, if you move or resize the image, you may have to readjust the TGC curve.*

**NOTE:** *With 360° transducers, the top slider adjusts the part of the image that is most central – that is, closest to the transducer.*

1. bk5000 only.

## Auto Gain

You can also choose to use Auto gain. With Auto gain, a selected preset defines the brightness for this particular type of scan (also depending on the transducer). Auto gain makes it possible to have the same brightness across different patients and body parts.

To activate/de-activate Auto gain:

- Click the **AutoGain** screen key in the image workspace and use +/- to toggle between on and off.

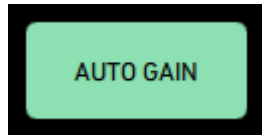


Figure 7-3. The Auto Gain parameter button.

To adjust the brightness/strength of Auto gain, click **A-Gain Level** and use the trackball or use +/- on the keyboard to increase or decrease the strength.

## Zoom

To zoom in or out on the area you are interested in, adjust the Zoom box and then make the part of the image that is inside the box fill the monitor.

**NOTE:** *To zoom in on a small part of the image, make the box smaller.*

### To use the Zoom box (zoom on different parts of the image):

- Press the **Zoom** key to create a zoom box.
- To move the zoom box, select it by clicking anywhere inside the box and dragging it.
- To resize the box (zoom in or out), turn the Zoom key or press +/- when the box is selected.

You can also resize the box by clicking one of the corners and then dragging the corner or using the +/- key.

- Select the zoom box and press the **Zoom** key again to zoom in on the image.

### To return to the original image:

- Press the Zoom key.

**NOTE:** *You can also zoom a frozen image.*



Pressing the Zoom key	Does this	You can
First press	Turns on the Zoom box and selects it. You can move (drag) it or resize it.	Turn Zoom key to change the size of the Zoom box. Use trackball to move it (drag) or resize it (+/- key).
Second press	Makes the contents of the (selected) Zoom box fill the entire monitor.	Press Zoom to return to the previous image.
Third press	Returns image to the state it was in before the first press.	

Table 7-1. Overview of the Zoom key.

## Depth

With a full 2D image, you adjust the depth to cut out parts below the part you are interested in. The image always includes the transducer surface, so this key changes the magnification of the image, stretching, or compressing it.

Adjusting the depth of a zoomed image changes the magnification even though the transducer surface is not necessarily visible at the top of the image.

### To adjust the depth:

- Turn the Zoom key when the Zoom function is turned off.

## Grayscale Map

Several gray scales can be used to display a 2D image or an M-mode image. Different gray scales may make various aspects of the image clearer.

### To adjust gray scale in 2D mode:

- 1 Click and slide the **Map** scale button.

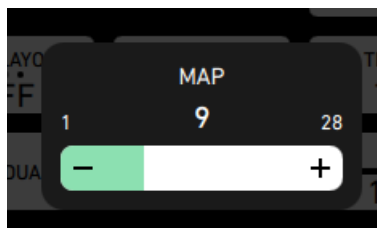


Figure 7-4. Map scale button.

### To select the gray scale in M-mode:

- Click the gray scale bar to the right of the M-mode image and select the gray scale you want or click the color bar and press +/-.

**NOTE:** When you image in Color or Power mode, you cannot use the color bar to change the 2D gray scale because it is used to control the color mapping.

## Combination Modes

2D (B-mode) can be used in combination with other modes. (The terms *duplex* and *triplex* imaging refer to combinations of 2 or 3 modes.)

The available combinations are:

- 2D+Color
- 2D+Color+Doppler
- 2D+Doppler
- 2D+Power+Doppler
- 2D+Power
- 2D+3D
- 2D+M
- 2D+CW
- 2D+Elasto
- 3D+Color

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, *press* the **B-Mode** key.

### To add another imaging mode:

- Press the **Color Mode**, **Power Mode**, or **Doppler Mode** key, or click the tab for the imaging mode. (To add M-mode, you must click the **M** tab on the monitor).

### To remove an imaging mode from the combination:

- Press the key for the mode you want to remove. You can also click the imaging mode tab when it is on top (This is the only way to turn off M-mode).

### To return from a combined mode to 2D only:

- Press the **B-Mode** key.

**NOTE:** *Pressing the **B-Mode** key several times lets you toggle back and forth between 2D and any combined mode.*

## Tissue Harmonic Imaging (True Echo Harmonics – TEH)

Tissue harmonic imaging can reduce noise and improve the clarity of the ultrasound image.

In normal 2D imaging, the transducer uses essentially the same frequency range for both transmitting and receiving. In harmonic imaging, the image is created by receiving higher frequencies (harmonics) that are multiples of the transmitted frequency ( $f$ ). Tissue harmonic imaging in the bk3000 and bk5000 is based on the 2nd harmonic ( $2f$ ) spectrum and pulse inversion.

### Using TEH

TEH can be used only with transducers that support harmonic imaging.

Each preset that permits TEH has default settings for overall gain, TGC gain, contour level, and contrast level for tissue harmonic imaging.

### Restrictions

- TEH is available only for certain transducers.

## Advantages

- Better images with difficult-to-image patients.
- Increased contrast resolution.
- Reduced effect of grating lobes.

### To turn TEH on or off:

Make sure that you are imaging in 2D (imaging is not frozen).

- Click the **Harmonics** button to toggle between on and off.

When you turn harmonic imaging off, 2D imaging resumes with the frequency, gain, dynamic range etc. that you were using previously.

## Displayed Frequencies for Tissue Harmonic Imaging

When TEH is turned on, the letter **H** appears next to the displayed frequency, which is the receiving frequency – double the transmitted frequency.

## Contrast Imaging

In contrast imaging, a contrast agent consisting of microbubbles is injected into the patient. When the ultrasound waves are reflected from the contrast agent, non-linear responses are generated. The non-linear signals are received and analyzed to create the contrast image.

Contrast imaging requires a software license from BK Medical and is available with selected transducers only, see the bk3000 or bk5000 Product Data Sheet.

### Contrast Agents

Contrast imaging is optimized for SonoVue® and DEFINITY® contrast agents. You must follow the manufacturer's guidelines for using contrast agents and pay attention to any warnings, recommended precautions and contraindications.

### Restrictions

Contrast imaging can be used only with:

- 2D imaging. If another imaging mode is active, contrast imaging is disabled.
- Contrast imaging is available only for certain transducers.

## Simultaneous Split-Screen Imaging and Contrast Imaging

It can be an advantage to use simultaneous split-screen imaging (see “Simultaneous Imaging” on page 40) with contrast so that you can see a contrast image that contains no tissue information along with a 2D image.

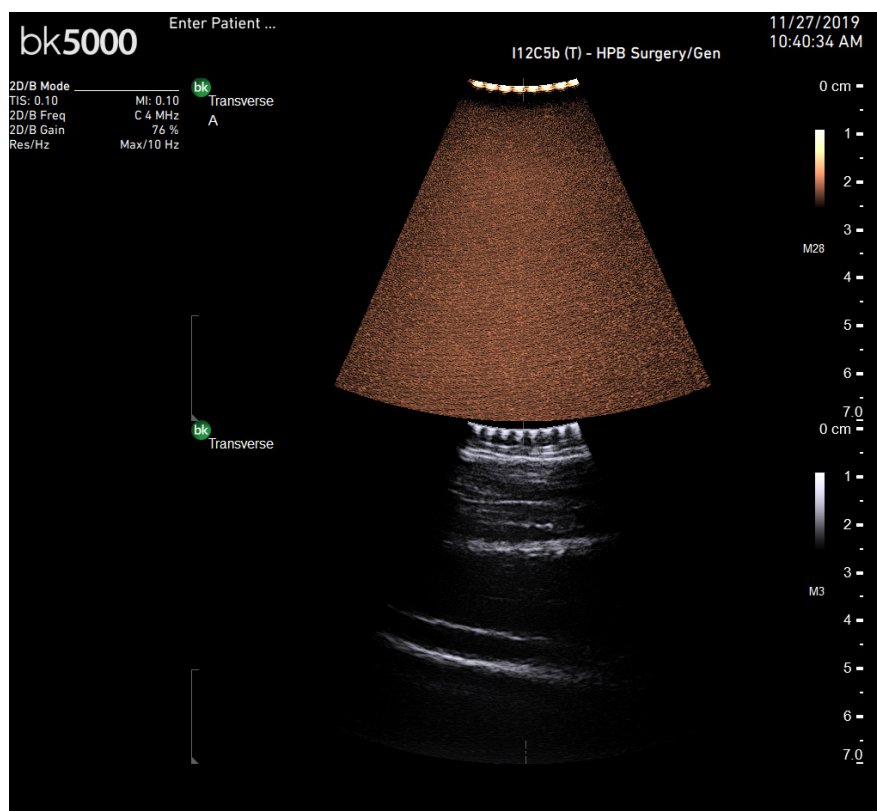


Figure 7-5. Contrast imaging with split screen.

### To turn contrast imaging on:

- Click on the **Contrast** tab in the workspace.

It is also possible to configure a key to enable and disable contrast imaging. See “Setting Up and Customizing Your System” on page 257.

When contrast imaging is turned on, the letter **C** appears next to the frequency at the top of the monitor. Contrast imaging appears in simultaneous split mode, with contrast imaging in screen A and 2D in screen B.

### To turn contrast imaging off:

Make sure that you are imaging.

- Click on the **Contrast** tab.

**NOTE:** When you turn contrast imaging off, the MI returns to its previous value.

### To use contrast imaging:

- 1 Make sure that you have a license for contrast imaging. See “License Tab” on page 286.
- 2 Click on the **Contrast** tab.  
The contrast frequency is displayed at the top of the monitor, preceded by **C**.
- 3 Inject the contrast agent and start the timer. (See “Timer” below.)
- 4 Check the MI setting. When you turn on contrast imaging, the MI limit is reduced to avoid bursting the bubbles in the contrast agent. You can turn the **Doppler Mode** button to make small changes to the setting in order to make it suitable for the type of tissue and depth of the region of interest. (See “Adjusting MI” on page 91.)
- 5 Press **Capture** to save clips or images to the patient archiving system so you can review them later.
- 6 If you want to inject more contrast agent, you can burst the remaining bubbles first. (See “Bubble Burst” on page 78.)

### Timer

You can start the timer to keep track of the elapsed time after you inject a contrast agent. The time will be displayed on a saved or printed image.

#### To start the timer:

- Click **Contrast Timer** in the workspace.  
The timer starts running and is visible in the image area of the monitor. This time is saved when you save or print the image. You can move the time to a new location on the image by clicking and dragging it.

#### To stop the timer:

- Click **Contrast Timer**.  
The time value in the image area disappears.

## Bubble Burst

When you use the **Bubble Burst** function, a stronger ultrasound pulse is emitted to burst the remaining bubbles so that you can inject additional contrast agent to repeat the examination.

### To use **Bubble Burst**:

- Click **Bubble Burst** at the bottom of the monitor or press a user-defined key.

## Needle Enhancement

Needle Enhancement uses an adjustment of compounding plus improved focusing to help the user see the needle during interventional procedures. A needle icon indicates where you will get the best visibility.

*Before you perform any puncture procedure, including therapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.*

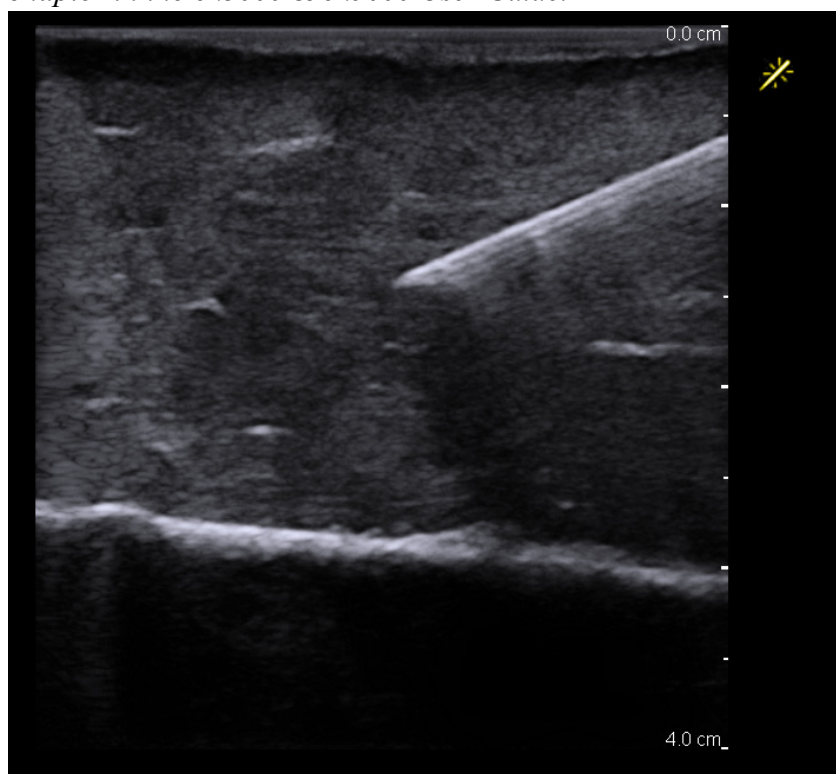



Figure 7-6. Image showing the Needle Enhancement icon and inserted needle

In 2D, you can access Needle Enhancement on the keyboard (using the **Steer**  button) or by clicking the **Needle Enhance** button.

A dropdown displays the 3 options:

- **Left**
- **Off**
- **Right**

**Left** and **Right** switch sides on the image and **Off** returns you to default 2D image quality.

## Activate Needle Enhancement

Do as follows:

- 1 Ensure that **2D** is active.
- 2 Click **Needle Enhance** to select from which side you enter the needle.

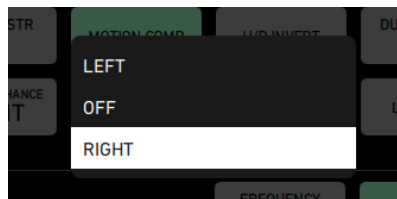


Figure 7-7. Needle Enhance dropdown menu

**NOTE:** Make sure that you adjust the icon  to match your needle insertion side.

- 3 If needed, for example in steep needle angles, you can adjust the balance between the needle strength echo and image quality. For this, click and slide the **Needle Str.** toggle. Increase the number to increase the needle shaft visibility. Decrease the number to improve image quality over needle visualization.



Figure 7-8. Needle strength slider

Note that the **Needle Str.** screen key will only be active when Needle Enhancement is on.

## Color Mode and Power Mode

Color mode (CFM) ultrasound displays color-coded real-time information about direction and velocity of flow in the tissues.

Power mode displays color-coded information about the amount of flow but not the direction.

## Color Submodes

On the **Color** tab, you can select the submode you want. The view must be imaging when you do this.

Three submodes are available in Color mode imaging:

- **Velocity** (standard color mode)
- **VFI** (See “Vector Flow Imaging (VFI)” on page 105)
- **Tru-Color**. Tru-Color is an alternative to normal color mode without the persist function. It has less averaging and is therefore able to maintain a significantly higher temporal resolution. In this way, you can more easily visualize the hemodynamics, including differences between systole and diastole.

## Color Coding of Flow

In a Color mode image, the frequencies of the reflected ultrasound waves are measured to show the velocity and direction of the blood flow. The result is displayed in color on the monitor.

Flow Direction	Default Color
Toward the transducer	Red
Away from the transducer	Blue

Table 7-2. Default color coding in Color mode.

It is possible to invert this color-coding or select a different one.

## Independent D-Mode/C-Mode Steering

Independent steering of PW Doppler and CFM is possible using the **Sync Steer** screen key. To enable independent steering, click the **Sync Steer** button to deselect the setting under the **PW** tab.

**NOTE:** This feature is only available for certain transducers and exam types.

## Color Box

When Color mode or Power mode imaging is turned on, a color box is superimposed on the 2D image. The color box outlines the area of the tissue in which flow information is available.

You can adjust the size and position of the color box to examine flow in various parts of the 2D image. The view must be imaging when you do this.

### To move the color box:

- Click inside the box and drag the box.

### To resize the color box:

- 1 Select the box by clicking inside it.
- 2 Press +/-.

## Color Scales

Various color scales can be used to display a Color mode or Power mode image or a Doppler spectrum.



### To select the color scale:

- Click the color bar to the right of the image and select the color scale you want.

**NOTE:** When you image in Color or Power mode, you cannot use the color bar to change the 2D gray scale because it is used to control the color mapping.

## Elastography

Elastography is a medical imaging mode using manual tissue compression or motion from e.g. patient cardiac movement or respiration, in order to evaluate tissue stiffness. Elastography requires a software license from BK Medical and is available with selected transducers only, see the bk3000 or bk5000 Product Data Sheet.

Before using elastography, you should be adequately trained in ultrasonography.

To activate elastography mode:

- On the **Image** tab, click **Elasto**.

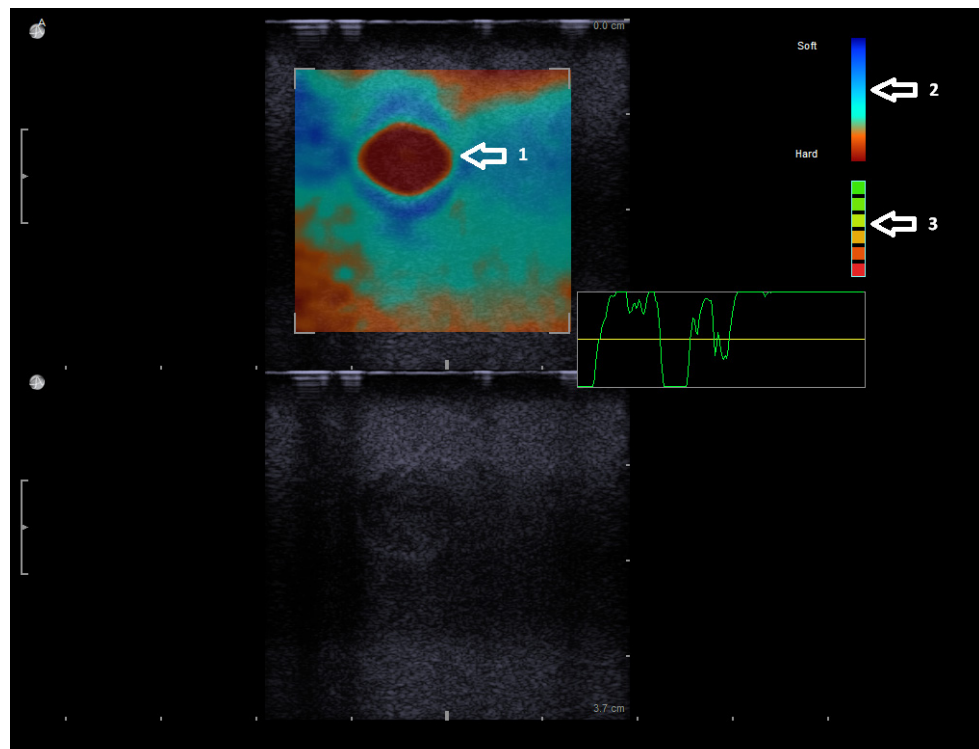


Figure 7-9. Elastography imaging (default horizontal view).

- 1 Region of interest (ROI)
- 2 Color Map
- 3 Quality Indicator

## Color Box

When elastography mode imaging is turned on, a color box is superimposed on the 2D image. The color box outlines the area of the tissue in which information is available.

You can adjust the size and position of the color box to examine various parts of the 2D image. The view must be imaging when you do this.

**To move the color box:**

- Click inside the box and drag the box.

**To resize the color box:**

- 1 Select the box by clicking inside it or pressing the **Color Box** key.
  - 2 Press +/-.
- or
- Click a corner of the box and drag the corner.

## Color Map

The color map represents the variants in levels of relative hardness/softness. The default setting depends on the Exam Type/preset. If you click on the color map, you can choose from a set of different color codes.

## Quality Indicator

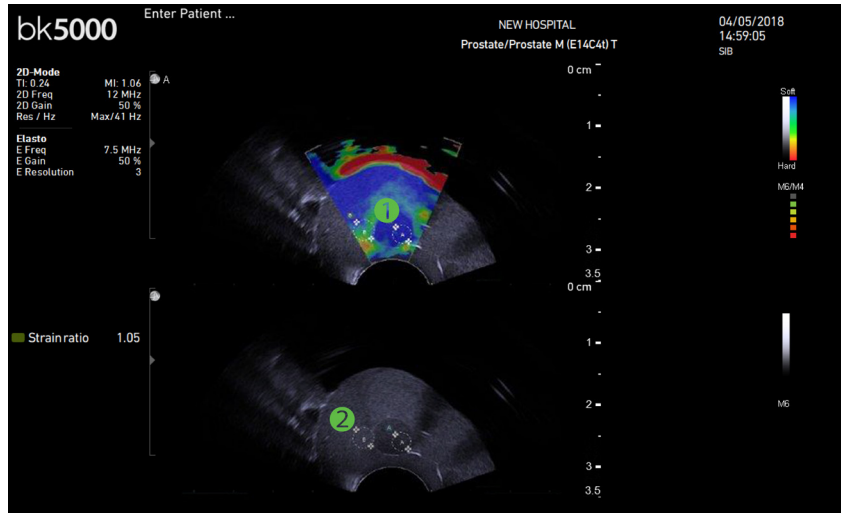
The quality indicator displays the amount of pressure being placed on the transducer. If the green indicator is at the top, transducer compression is at the optimum level, but even if the indicator only shows one square, the image can be useful. A good image is one that can be reproduced.

## Strain Ratio Measurement

Strain ratio measurements can be used to quantify the relative stiffness between the region of interest (ROI) and the surrounding tissue. To perform a strain ratio measurement:

- 3 Click the **Elasto** tab, click **Measurements** and then **Strain Ratio**.
- 4 Click inside the ROI and then move the trackball to create a measurement circle. When the circle is the required diameter, click again to set the measurement circle on the screen.
- 5 Repeat the measurement process outside the ROI.

The strain ratio appears in the measurement data to the left of the image.



1. A measurement circle inside the ROI (elastography screen)

2. A measurement circle outside the ROI (B-mode screen).

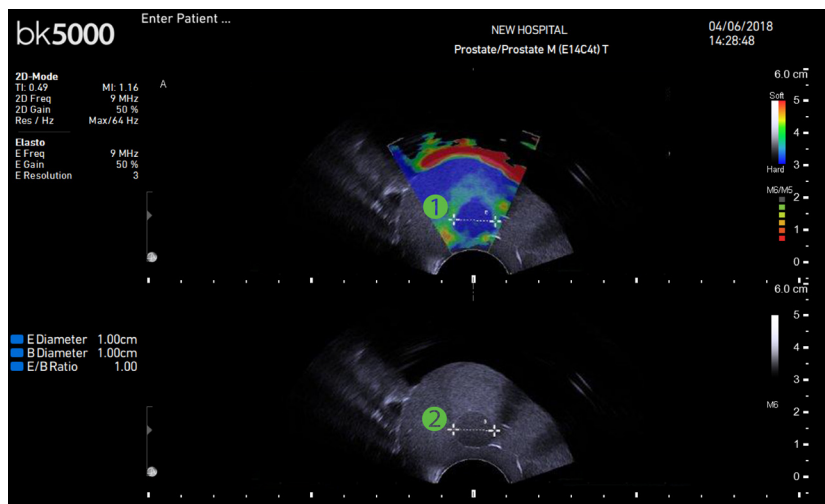
Figure 7-10. A strain ratio measurement.

## Diameter Comparison Measurement

The elastography diameter of an ROI can be compared to the 2D diameter.

- 1 Click **Measurements** and then click **E/B Diameter**.
- 2 Click on the edge of the ROI in the elastography screen and move the trackball to the opposite side of the ROI. Click again to place an E-diameter line.
- 3 Repeat the measurement process in the 2D screen to place a B-diameter line.

The E/B ratio appears in the measurement data to the left of the image.



1. A diameter line inside the ROI (elastography screen).

2. A diameter line inside the ROI (B-mode screen).

Figure 7-11. A diameter comparison measurement.

## Doppler Mode – Spectral Doppler

Doppler mode (spectral Doppler mode) imaging displays information about the spectrum of flow velocities as a function of time. It is sometimes called FFT (Fast Fourier Transform) because the information is presented as a frequency spectrum indicating velocity components.

### Turning Doppler Mode On or Off

When you turn Doppler mode on, 2D must be imaging.

#### To turn on Doppler mode:

- Press the **Doppler Mode** key.

The Doppler indicator, including both the Doppler line and the Doppler gate, appears superimposed on the 2D image and the Doppler spectrum appears.

To position the Doppler gate on a 2D image, use the trackball and select keys.

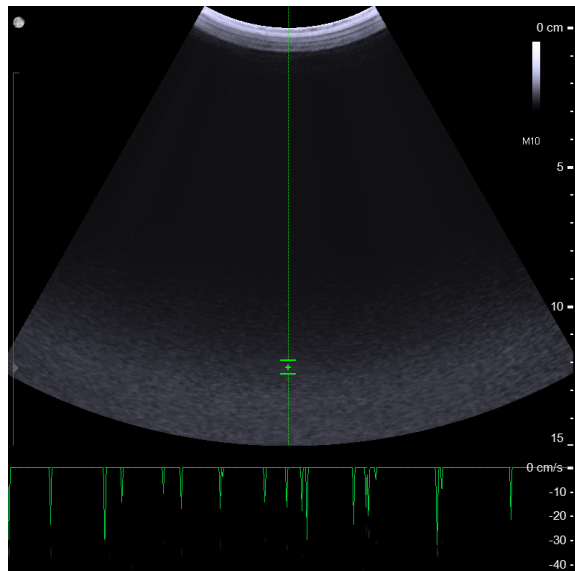


Figure 7-12. The Doppler indicator (line and gate) superimposed on a 2D image.

Fig 7-13 shows information available in Doppler indicators.

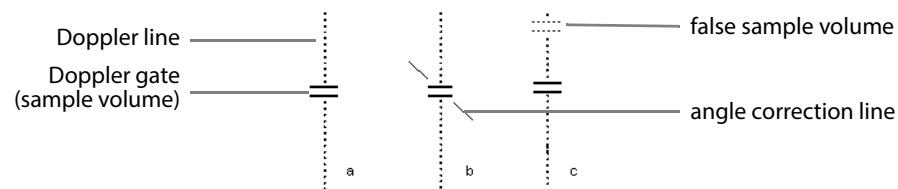


Figure 7-13. Doppler indicators (three examples).

**Fig 7-13 (a)** The dotted line represents the Doppler line. The horizontal lines show the Doppler gate.

**Fig 7-13 (b)** A diagonal line (relative to the Doppler line) indicates a sample volume with angle correction.

**Fig 7-13 (c)** The horizontal dotted lines show the false sample volume in HPRF (see page 86).

**To turn off Doppler mode:**

- Press the **Doppler Mode** key or the **B-Mode** key.

## Adjusting the Doppler Mode Image

### Doppler Indicator

When Doppler mode imaging is turned on, the Doppler indicator is superimposed on the 2D image.

You can adjust the position and size of the Doppler gate to get information from sample volumes in various parts of the 2D image. The image must not be frozen when you do this.

**To move the Doppler gate:**

- Drag the gate with the trackball.  
The sample volume line moves along with the gate.
- Click to set the Doppler gate.

**To resize the Doppler gate:**

- Click the Doppler indicator and then press **+/-**.

### Independent D-Mode/C-Mode Steering

Independent steering of PW Doppler and CFM is possible using the **Sync Steer** screen key. To enable independent steering, click **Sync Steer** in the workspace and switch the setting to **Off**.

**NOTE:** *This feature is only available for certain transducers and exam types.*

## Audio Volume

The Doppler signal can be played as an audio signal as well as appearing on the monitor.

**To adjust the volume of the audio signal:**

- Click and slide the **Volume** toggle. Press the **Invert** key if you cannot see this button on the PW tab.

## Adjusting the Doppler Mode Image

### Doppler Trace (Automatic Curve Tracing)

The system can automatically calculate and display a curve that traces the mean or peak values of the Doppler spectrum. See “Doppler Measurements” on page 97 for a description of the curves. You can also choose to have both the peak and mean curves displayed.

**To change which curve is displayed or to turn off the display:**

- Click **Trace** on the **Doppler** tab and select **Off**, **Peak**, **Mean+Peak**, or **Mean**.

**NOTE:** *Selecting Mean will display the mean curve but will not display results or values.*

To measure higher flow speeds (high range setting) in a sample volume placed deep in the tissue, HPRF (high PRF) is automatically used. When HPRF is active, the Doppler line shows the actual sample volume, and false sample volumes (shown dotted). See Fig 7-13 on page 84.

The false sample volumes should always be placed outside a vessel.

### Auto

The system can automatically adjust the Baseline and Scale to prevent aliasing and optimize the display of the Doppler spectrum.

**To optimize the baseline and scale for the current Doppler spectrum:**

- Press the **Auto** button on the keyboard.

### Gain

You can adjust the gain of the Doppler mode image. The view must be imaging when you do this.

**To adjust Doppler mode gain:**

- When spectrum is active, turn the Doppler key.

The current Doppler gain setting (a percentage) is displayed on the monitor at the top left next to **PW Gain**.

### Scale

You can vary the scale of the displayed spectrum.

**To adjust the velocity scale:**

- Click **Scale** at the bottom of the monitor and drag the slider.

The vertical scale is updated to correspond to the new range of velocities.

The current setting is displayed on the monitor next to **PW PRF**.

**NOTE:** *The wall filter value will be changed automatically when you change the scale.*

## Smooth

You can change how smooth the displayed spectrum looks.

**To change the smoothness of the spectrum display:**

- Click **Smoothing** under the **PW** tab and select the degree of smoothness you want (or click **Smoothing** and press +/-).

## Wall Filter

In Doppler mode, you can set the cutoff frequency for the wall filter.

**To set the cutoff frequency for the wall filter:**

- Click **Wall Filter** under the **PW** tab and select the value you want (or Click **Wall Filter** and press +/-).

## Invert

You can invert the spectrum on the monitor.

**To invert the spectrum or to return to the default:**

- Press the **Invert** key to toggle between the default and inverted spectrum coding.

The frequency axis is inverted to match the spectrum.

## Baseline

You can reposition the baseline. The baseline separates forward flow from reversed flow, and moving the axis can help overcome aliasing problems.

**To adjust the baseline:**

- Click on the **Baseline** button and slide to the desired value.

The frequency axis is updated to match the spectrum.

## Sweep Speed

You can adjust the sweep speed to change the number of cycles of the spectrum displayed on the full time axis. The available values range from 2 (slowest) to 8 (fastest).

**To select the sweep speed:**

- Click and slide **Sweep Speed** and select the required value.

The time axis is updated.

## M-Mode

There is no M-mode key on the keyboard.

### To turn M-mode on or off:

- Click the **M** tab in the workspace.

**NOTE:** *M-mode is only available for certain Exam Types. The M-mode tab is visible only when M-mode is available.*

M-mode (motion mode) ultrasound is produced by slowly sweeping one line of a 2D image across the monitor. The M-mode image illustrates a time series of images along this line.

M-mode can only be used in combination with 2D. Selecting any other mode will turn off M-mode.

You can return to imaging with 2D alone by pressing the **B-Mode** key.

M-mode uses the same imaging frequency and focus settings as 2D.

**NOTE:** *Only a single focal zone is possible in M-mode.*

Zooming and panning do not work directly in the M-mode image. When you make changes in the 2D image, they are applied to the M-mode image.

## The M-Mode Image

When M-mode is selected, the monitor is divided into two windows (see Fig 7-14). You can adjust how the two windows are displayed. The window with the vertical M-mode line shows the 2D image.



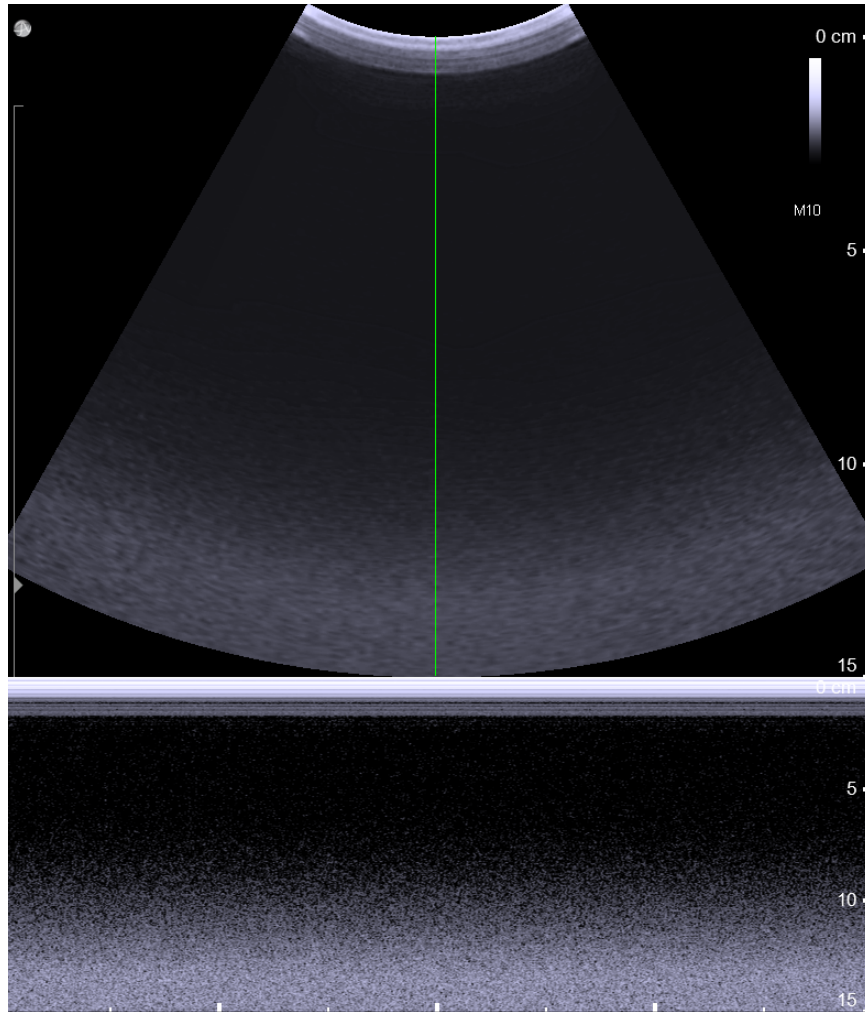


Figure 7-14. M-mode image.

### M-Mode Line

The M-mode line (see Fig 7-14) shows the path of the M-mode image in the 2D window. You can adjust the path of the image by moving the M-mode line (click it and drag).

### M-Mode Image Ruler

The M-mode image ruler scales the ruler range of the 2D image to the M-mode image. Any given value will represent the same position on both the M-mode and 2D images.

It is not possible to change the ruler.

### Saving a Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

#### To save a preset:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either Review or Report.

- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on Save Preset.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

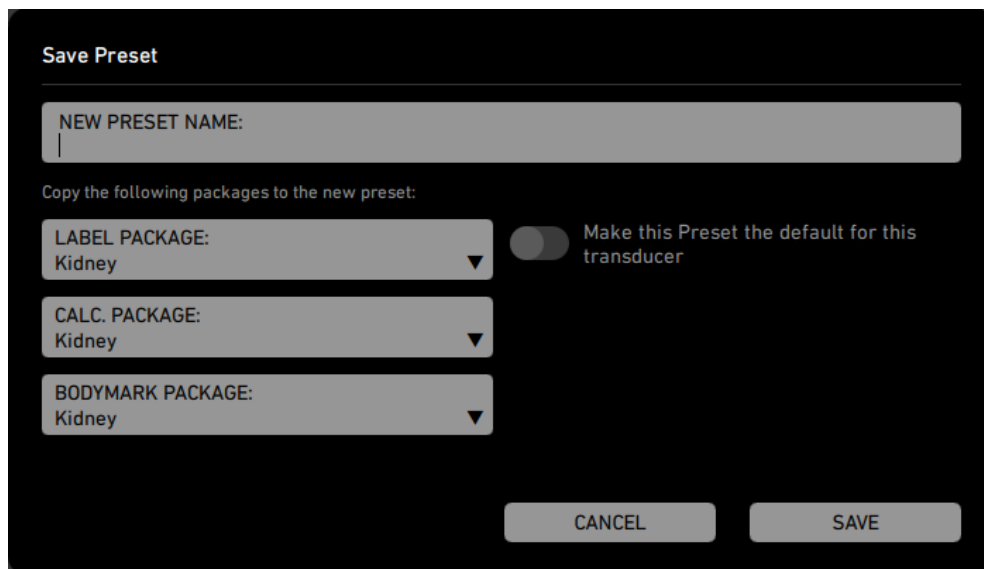


Figure 7-15. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a Preset” above, click on the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

# Chapter 8

## Continuous Wave Doppler Mode

---

### Overview

In Continuous Wave (CW) Doppler mode, ultrasound is transmitted along a line as a continuous wave and analyzed as it returns. CW Doppler provides greater velocity ranges when measuring high flow regions such as flow through the cardiac valves, especially with stenosis.

### Adjusting the Thermal Index Limit

Before you use CW Doppler mode, check that the TI settings are appropriate. The current TI tissue type and limit are displayed just under the BK Medical logo in the upper left corner of the monitor.

### Adjusting MI

You can adjust the maximum allowed MI (mechanical index).

#### To adjust the MI Limit:

- Click **MI Limit** in the workspace and drag the slider.

CW Doppler is a low voltage mode, so the MI will always be low.

### Turning CW Doppler Mode On or Off

You must turn CW Doppler on and position the CW Doppler line before you turn on the CW spectrum.

#### To turn on CW Doppler mode:

Make sure that the **Preset** is **Cardiac**, that you are imaging in 2D, and that the image is not frozen.

- Click the **CW** tab.

The CW Doppler line appears superimposed on the 2D image.

Drag the line to the position you want.

#### To unfreeze the CW Doppler spectrum:

- Press the **Update** key on the keyboard.

**NOTE:** *The 2D image is frozen while the live CW Doppler spectrum is displayed.*

#### To switch between live 2D and live CW Doppler mode:

- Press the **Update** key on the keyboard.

### To turn off CW Doppler mode:

- Click the **CW** tab twice.

## CW Doppler Line

CW Doppler information is acquired along the full length of the CW Doppler line.

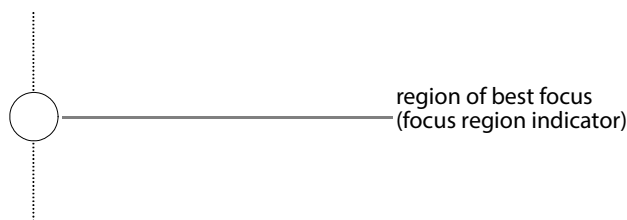


Figure 8-1. CW Doppler line.

The dotted line is the CW Doppler line. The circle indicates the region where the CW Doppler signal is best focused.

When CW Doppler mode imaging is turned on, the CW Doppler line is superimposed on the 2D image.

You can adjust the position of the line to get information from samples in various parts of the 2D image. Place the focus region indicator on the region of interest. The system must be imaging when you do this.

### To move the CW Doppler line and focus region indicator:

- 1 When the CW Doppler line is active, drag with trackball to the desired position. Moving the trackball to the left or right moves the line, and moving the trackball up and down moves the focus region along the line.

## Audio Volume

The CW Doppler signal can be played as an audio signal as well as appearing on the monitor.

### To adjust the volume of the audio signal:

- Click and slide the **Volume** toggle. Press the **Update** key if you cannot see this button on the CW tab.

## Adjusting the Doppler Mode Image

### Doppler Trace (Automatic Curve Tracing)

You can have the system automatically calculate and display a curve that traces the mean or peak values of the Doppler spectrum. You can also choose to have both the peak and mean curves displayed.

### To change which curve is displayed or to turn off the display:

- 1 Click **Trace** on the CW tab and select **Off**, **Peak**, **Mean+Peak**, or **Mean** on the dropdown.



**NOTE:** A CW Doppler signal is much weaker than a PW Doppler signal. Therefore, automatic curve tracing does not always give good results, and measurements based on the curve will not be accurate. If the automatic curve is not a good fit to the signal, you must manually draw the curve to be used for measurements.

## Auto

The system can automatically adjust the Baseline and Scale to prevent aliasing and optimize the display of the Doppler spectrum.

### To optimize the baseline and scale for the current Doppler spectrum:

- Press the **Auto** button on the keyboard.  
If this does not work, and the **Auto** button only makes a beep, then press the **Update** key first. Different controls will appear in the workspace and the **Auto** key will now work.

## Gain

You can adjust the gain of the CW Doppler mode image. The view must be imaging when you do this.

### To adjust CW Doppler mode gain:

- When spectrum is active, turn the Doppler key.  
The current Doppler gain setting (a percentage) is displayed on the monitor at the top left next to **CW Gain**.

## Scale

You can vary the scale of the displayed spectrum.

### To adjust the velocity scale:

- Click **Scale** at the bottom of the workspace and drag the slider.  
The vertical scale is updated to correspond to the new range of velocities.  
The current setting is displayed on the monitor next to **CW Scale**.

**NOTE:** The wall filter value will be changed automatically when you change the scale.

## Smooth

You can change how smooth the displayed spectrum looks.

### **To change the smoothness of the spectrum display:**

- Click **Smoothing** under the **CW** tab and select the degree of smoothness you want (or click **Smoothing** and press +/-).

## **Wall Filter**

In CW Doppler mode, you can set the cutoff frequency for the wall filter.

### **To set the cutoff frequency for the wall filter:**

- Click **Wall Filter** under the **CW** tab and select the value you want (or Click **Wall Filter** and press +/-).

## **Invert**

You can invert the spectrum on the monitor.

### **To invert the spectrum or to return to the default:**

- Press the **Invert** key to toggle between the default and inverted spectrum coding.  
The frequency axis is inverted to match the spectrum.

## **Baseline**

You can reposition the baseline. The baseline separates forward flow from reversed flow, and moving the axis can help overcome aliasing problems.

### **To adjust the baseline:**

- Click on the **Baseline** button and slide to the desired value.  
The frequency axis is updated to match the spectrum.

## **Sweep Speed**

You can adjust the sweep speed to change the number of cycles of the spectrum displayed on the full time axis.

### **To select the sweep speed:**

- Click on the **Sweep Speed** button and slide to the desired value.  
The time axis is updated.

# Chapter 9

## Exam Types

---

### Before You Begin

The information in this user guide may not correspond to the Exam Types on your system as Exam Types can be customized.

Before reading about the Exam Types, you should already be familiar with:

- Working with images on the system (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”).
- Making measurements with the system (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”).
- Documenting the image and its results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”).

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*.

### If You Perform a Puncture Procedure

*Before you perform any puncture procedure, including therapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.*

### What Is a Exam Type?

An Exam Type is a pre-defined configuration for the layout and user interface of the monitor. There are different Exam Types for different types of examinations.

Your choice of Exam Type determines:

- Patient information fields needed for the examination
- Specialized presets
- Layout of controls on the monitor (including which controls are available)
- Labels and bodymarks
- Reports
- Measuring tools and pre-defined calculations

### Presets

A preset is a pre-defined setup that optimizes the image for a particular type of imaging. It includes suitable settings for gain, frequency, etc.

The Examination Type you can select on the system is a combination of an Exam Type and a preset.

The following Exam Types are available on the system:

- Abdomen
- Brachytherapy
- Neuro (bk5000 only)
- OB

- Colorectal
- Gyn
- HPB Surgery (bk5000 only)
- Lap & Robotic (bk5000 only)
- Micro Neuro (bk5000 only)
- MSK & Nerve
- Pediatric
- Pelvic Floor
- Prostate
- Small Parts
- Vascular
- 

The information in the first part of this chapter applies to all Exam Types. Any additional information that applies to individual exam types is described in Chapter 10 through Chapter 17.

## Measurements

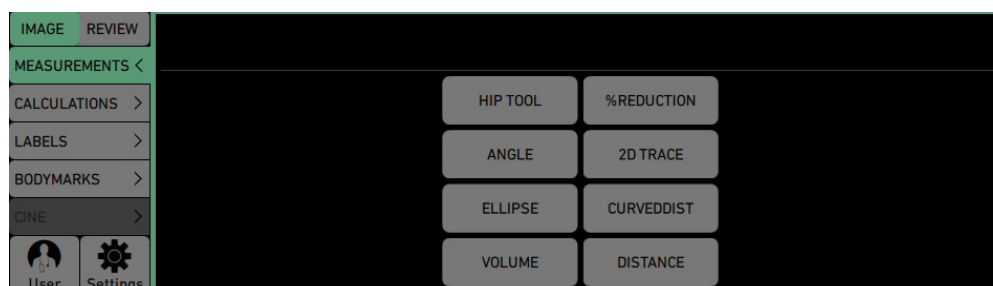


Figure 9-1. Workspace showing Measurements tab open

Each Exam Type contains a set of measurements and calculations that are appropriate for a specific type of examination. Calculations vary according to the specific Exam Type, but the general instructions for making a measurement are the same.

### To make a measurement:

- 1 Click on the **Measurements** tab in the left side of the workspace.
- 2 Click the name of the measurement.  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 3 Drag the caliper to the position you want and click.  
If the measurement requires 2 calipers, another one appears.
- 4 Drag the second caliper to the position you want and click.
- 5 Repeat this until you have positioned all the calipers for the measurement.

**NOTE:** *The look of the calipers themselves and of any lines that connect them depend on what you are measuring.*



After you have positioned all the calipers, the result appears at the left side of the monitor:

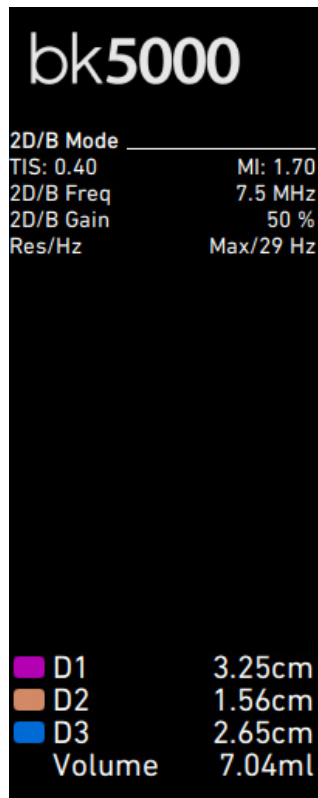


Figure 9-2. Measurements results

## Doppler Measurements

Many Exam Types contain Doppler measurements, as most vascular calculations involve making measurements on a Doppler (FFT) spectrum.

You can fit a curve to the spectrum either automatically (see “Doppler Trace (Automatic Curve Tracing)” on page 86) or manually and then make measurements on the curve.

Two curve types are generally used.

This type of curve	Is a trace of...
<b>Peak (Max)</b>	maximum points of the spectrum (those farthest from the baseline).
<b>Mean</b>	mean points of the spectrum.

Table 9-1. Two types of Doppler curves.

Fig 9-3 depicts a Doppler spectrum with two cycles. A cycle starts at the *start systole* (when the heart starts to contract) and ends at the *end diastole* (when the heart is resting and filled with blood). The correct placement of vascular calculation markers is indicated in the figure; their abbreviations are as follows:

- SS** Start systole
- PS** Peak systole
- ES** End systole
- MD** Minimum diastole
- ED** End diastole

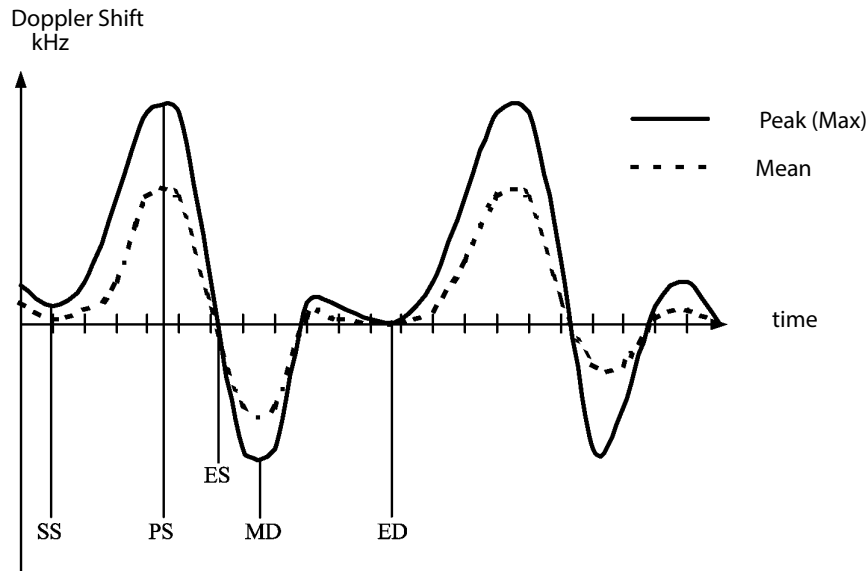


Figure 9-3. Doppler spectrum including vascular calculation markers.

The calculations and the way in which they are presented on the monitor depend on whether the Doppler angle is active or not.

Doppler Angle Active? (Yes/No)	Velocity or Frequency
No	Frequency measured at intersection of marker line and Doppler curve.
Yes	Velocity measured, and frequency parameters replaced by corresponding velocity parameters, (dF by dV, FACC by ACC, F1, and F2 by V1 and V2.)

When the Doppler angle is turned off or altered, the results are recalculated.

## Reduction

The **%Reduction** measurement uses the area of the vessel before or after the stenosis and the area of the vessel at the stenosis (residual lumen) to calculate the degree (%) of stenosis. You can base the stenosis calculation on the distance across the vessel or the area of the vessel lumen.

To find the reduction measurement, freeze the image, click **Measurements**, and select **%Reduction**. Click on the image to place your measurement points.

## Reduction Based on Ellipses

When you use areas to calculate stenosis, make one area measurement to measure each of the following:

- Click **%Reduction** and measure the total lumen of the vessel.
- Click to set the measurement. A new caliper is displayed inside the ellipse or circle.
- Measure the residual lumen of the vessel.
- Click to set the measurement.

The result on the monitor is continuously updated while you position the second ellipse or circle.

## VF (Volume Flow)

VF (volume flow) is calculated by multiplying the time average mean velocity (TAM) by a defined cross-section of a vascular structure. The cross-section is measured on a 2D image; the TAM is measured on a Doppler spectrum. These do not have to be measured on the same image.

You can calculate VF based on cross-section measures using a distance (VF Dist), an ellipse (VF Ell), or a circle (VF Circ).

**NOTE:** *VF can only be measured with the Doppler angle on.*

## TAM (Time Average Mean) and TAP (Time Average Peak)

- TAM = average value (over time) of mean frequencies in the Doppler spectrum.
- TAP = average value (over time) of the peak frequencies in the Doppler spectrum.

You can measure TAM and TAP in different ways:

- Automatic – you position markers on the spectrum (using the automatic curve tracing, if that is turned on), and the automatic Doppler curve is used with the markers to calculate TAM or TAP.
- Manual – you draw several cycles of the Doppler curve manually.

TAM and TAP can only be measured with the Doppler angle on.

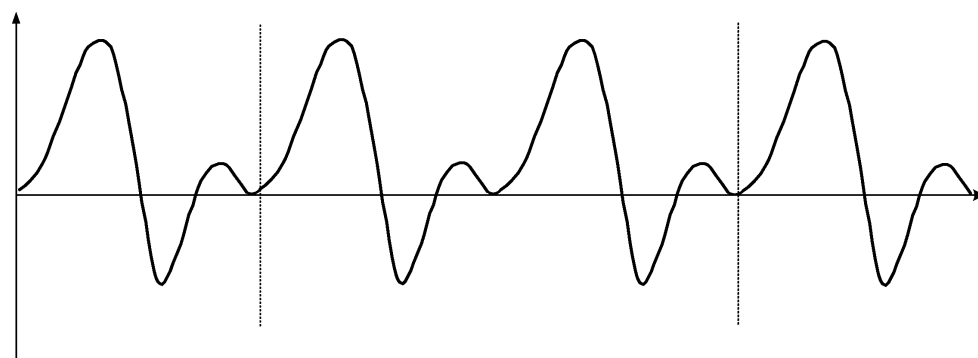


Figure 9-4. Measuring TAM on the Doppler spectrum.

### To measure TAM or TAP using the automatic Doppler curve:

- 1 Click **Auto** and make sure that **TAM** and/or **TAP** is selected in the **Results** tab of the **Measure & Calcs** section under **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Auto Doppler** in the **Measurements** tab in the workspace.
- 3 Position 2 line markers to specify the time interval (number of cycles) over which the frequency values are averaged. (See Fig 9-4.)

The TAM and/or TAP value is displayed.

**NOTE:** Turn on the Doppler trace to make sure that the trace appears to be a good fit to the spectrum so that the basis for the automatic calculation is correct.

You can also draw a Doppler curve manually on the spectrum and use it to measure TAM or TAP.

### To measure TAM and TAP manually:

- 1 Click **Measurements** and select **D Trace Freehand**.
- 2 Draw a curve that follows the mean frequencies of the spectrum, starting and ending at the same part of the cycle.

The TAM and or TAP value is displayed to the left of the image.

## RI and PI (Resistance Index and Pulsatility Index)

The resistance index (Pourcelot index) is based on the peak systolic velocity ( $V_{\max}$ ) and the end-diastolic minimum velocity ED ( $V_{\text{ed}}$ ) in a supply vessel. RI indicates the level of impedance to blood flow; a high RI suggests increased peripheral vascular resistance.

The pulsatility index represents the hemodynamic conditions in a vessel. It is based on the peak systolic velocity ( $V_{\max}$ ), the maximum velocity at minimum diastole ( $V_{\text{min-dia}}$ ), and the average ( $V_{\text{mean}}$ ) of the peak (max) flow velocity curve. PI describes the elasticity of the vessel combined with the level of peripheral resistance.

The A/B ratio (Stuart index) is calculated as the ratio between PS ( $V_{\text{ps}}$ ) and ED ( $V_{\text{ed}}$ ).

The advantage of using indices rather than absolute velocities is that the indices are independent of the insonation angle.

Index	Formula
A/B ratio	PS/ED
Resistance index	(PS-ED)/PS
Pulsatility index	(PS-MD)/Mean

Table 9-2. Formulas for the main Doppler indices.

The correct placement of markers for measuring RI and PI is indicated in Fig 9-3. “Mean” in the Pulsatility index formula is the averaged max flow velocity.

All main Doppler indices are measured together.

## PS, ED, RI, PI, S/D

### You can measure the Doppler indices in different ways:

- Automatic: The Doppler curve is drawn automatically and you position markers on it.
- Manual: you draw the Doppler curve manually (freehand).
- Real-time: the system calculates and displays the indices automatically in real time.

### To measure the Doppler indices automatically:

- 1 Click on the **Measurements** tab while in Doppler mode and select **Auto Doppler**.
- 2 Position one marker at the *start systolic* (SS) frequency.
- 3 Position the second marker at the *end diastolic* (ED) frequency.  
The Ps, Ed, PI, RI, and S/D measurements are displayed to the left of the image.

Minimum two cycles must be included between the time cursors. The calculated index is an average over the cycles.

**NOTE:** Make sure that the trace appears to be a good fit to the spectrum so that the basis for the automatic calculation is correct.

### To measure PI manually:

- 1 Click **D Trace Freehand** on the **Measurements** tab.
- 2 Position the marker on the *start systolic* (SS) frequency and click.
- 3 Draw a curve that traces a line along the whole maximum spectrum through the *peak systolic* (PS) frequency, the *minimum diastolic* (MD), and onto the *end diastolic* (ED) frequency.
- 4 Click.  
Ps, Ed, PI, RI, and S/D measurements are displayed

If the traced curve covers more than one cycle, the PI is calculated as the average of each cycle.

## Real-Time Measurements

The following measurements can be made and displayed in real time, so that they are continually updated during imaging:

- PS
- ED
- RI
- PI
- TAM
- TAP

Note that it takes a few cycles before the real-time measurements are displayed.

## Calculations

The calculation formulas and accuracies, along with the tables and formulas used by the system, are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*.



# Chapter 10

## Vascular Chapter

---

This chapter contains information useful for basic vascular imaging including:

- Peripheral arteries
- Peripheral veins

Important:

Read *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before system use.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient – Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- VFI (Vector Flow Imaging)
- Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window.
- 3** Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

### Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, select the appropriate **Exam Type** and **Preset**. These will vary with each transducer.



Figure 10-1. Preset window for 8L2

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-Mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

### Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

#### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.

#### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

#### To remove a split:

- Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.



## Color Mode (CFM)

### To use Color mode:

- 1 Press **Color Mode** key on keyboard, or click **Color** tab on monitor.  
Color box is active (green color) and can be moved with trackball.
- 2 To resize the color box and keep the default shape, use the **+ /-** key.
- 3 To decrease the color box width, click to deactivate the size cursor, then click on a corner of the box and drag the corner.
- 4 Click when you are finished changing the color box.

### Color gain:

- Adjust color gain by *turning* the **Color Mode** key.

### Scale:

- Change PRF with the **Scale** keyboard key or **Scale** screen button.

## Doppler Mode

When you turn Doppler mode on, 2D must be imaging.

### To use Doppler mode:

- 1 Press the **Doppler Mode** or click on the PW tab in the workspace.  
The Doppler indicator (green), including both the Doppler line and the Doppler gate, appears superimposed on the 2D image and the Doppler spectrum appears.
- 2 To position the Doppler gate on a 2D image, use the trackball.
- 3 To resize the Doppler gate, use the **+/-** key.
- 4 To adjust the angle, use the **Angle Correct** toggle.  
In Doppler mode, this control will also be available when measuring.

## Volume Flow

### To use Volume Flow:

- 1 In PW Doppler, click on **Volume Flow** measurement.  
Calipers appear to measure the diameter of the vessel, then vertical measurement lines appear on the Doppler spectral trace.
- 2 Place the first one at the beginning of a cardiac cycle and then place the second one farther along the spectral trace to include at least two cardiac cycles.  
Volume flow rate appears in ml/min.

## Vector Flow Imaging (VFI)

Vector Flow Imaging is available as an option on the bk3000 and bk5000 ultrasound systems.

**NOTE:** *Before you use VFI, make sure that you have read the warnings in the VFI section of the Safety chapter of the bk3000/bk5000 Short User Guide.*

Normally, color imaging shows only axial flows. Vector Flow Imaging is a technology that uses ultrasound pulses in both axial and lateral directions. The measured signals are therefore sensitive to both axial and transverse motion.

VFI requires a software license from BK Medical and is available with selected transducers only. See the *bk5000* and *bk3000 Product Data sheets*.

**NOTE:** *The recommended max depth of using VFI is between 15 and 20 mm. Lower frequency equals higher depth.*

VFI can be useful for visualizing the following with high sensitivity:

- Flow when the transducer is perpendicular to the vessel – flow visualization that is independent of imaging angle.
- Carotid and other vessels with high or complex flow.

Vector Flow Imaging can be used in the velocity range of 10 cm/s to 315 cm/s with the corresponding PRF.

Using auto-correlation estimators, both the axial and transverse velocity components are determined and used to make an estimate of 2D blood velocity that does not depend on the image angle.

This method makes it easier to achieve a sufficient image angle and makes it possible to visualize complex flow patterns.

The maximum velocity that can be observed depends on the PRF. Higher velocities can be seen when the PRF is higher.

The direction and velocity of the flow are indicated on the image with color and also by arrows.

### **Color Flow Indicators for VFI – The Color Map**

The **Color Map** is the default color flow indicator for interpreting the color. The **Color Map** outlines the maximum flow velocity by color. If you highlight the **Color Map** you can choose between 3 different VFI color options.

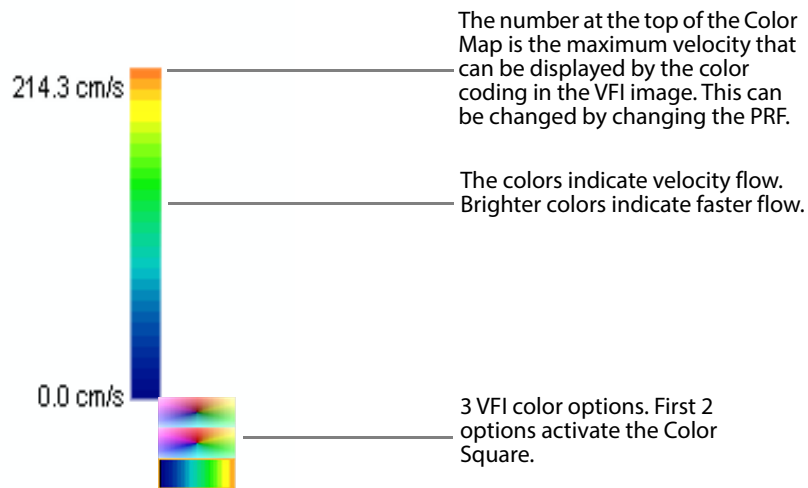


Figure 10-2. Explanation of the Color Map for Vector Flow Imaging.

### Saturation/Brightness = Speed

Colors located nearer the top of the **Color Map** (less saturated colors) indicate faster flow.

### Color Flow Indicators for VFI – The Color Square

The **Color Square** is an alternative to the **Color Map** for interpreting color. If you choose this color indicator, flow direction and velocity are mapped by color. You can move the **Color Square** around on the monitor (like a bodymark) so that it does not interfere with what you are trying to observe.

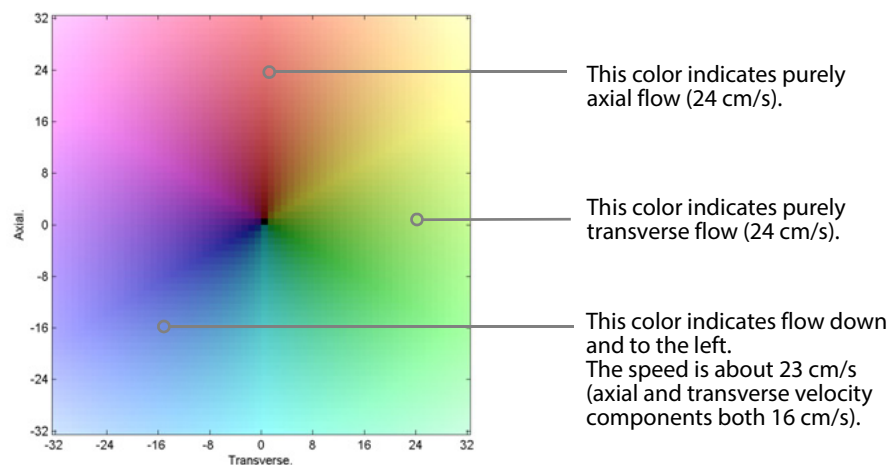


Figure 10-3. Explanation of the Color Square for Vector Flow Imaging. The values are only for illustrative purposes, as the color information is intended to be qualitative rather than quantitative.

### Saturation/Brightness = Speed

The center of the square is black. Black indicates zero flow.

Colors located farther from the center (less saturated colors) indicate faster flow.

### Color (Hue) = Direction

The color (hue) indicates the flow direction. For example, yellow indicates flow up and to the right.

## Using VFI

VFI is activated by selecting the VFI color submode. VFI is available with selected transducers only. See the *bk5000* and *bk3000 Product Data sheets*.

### To activate VFI:

- 1 Click **Color** and select **VFI**.
- 2 Click **VFI Grid Size** and **VFI Arrow Size** and select size on the dropdown menu.

Steering of the color box is not possible when you use VFI

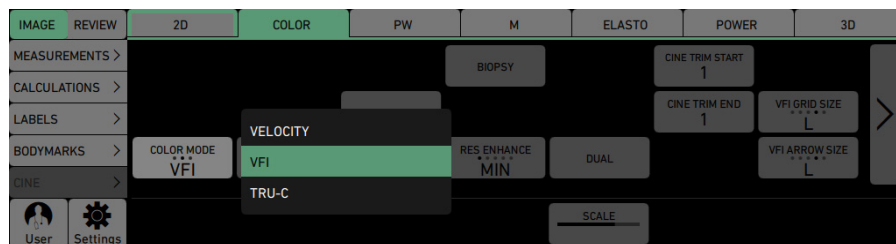


Figure 10-4. Selecting VFI submode.

## Arrow Flow Indicators for VFI

Direction and relative velocity are also indicated by arrows superimposed on the flow part of the image. Longer arrows indicate higher velocity.

### Arrow Size (VFI)

Use **Arrow Size (VFI)** to adjust the space between the arrows and the size of the arrows in VFI mode. You can choose 4 different size settings (the default setting is Large).

## Streamlined VFI Workflow

You can use VFI to ease the workload when determining peak systolic velocity or calculating volume flow rate.

In **2D+VFI+PW** mode, VFI can assist the user with:

- Doppler gate placement
- Vessel outline
- Angle correction
- Doppler steering
- Inverting the Doppler spectrum (when needed)
- Selecting the appropriate Scale/PRF (Pulse Repetition Frequency)
- Adaptively adjusting Doppler sample volume size (PW gate)
- Volume Flow Measurement

## Determining Peak Systolic Velocity

**To determine the peak systolic velocity:**

- 1 Find the artery and add Color mode by clicking **Color**.
- 2 On the **Color Mode** tab, select **VFI**. You will see the arrows showing the direction of the flow.
- 3 Add Doppler mode by clicking **PW**.
- 4 Click **Assist**. Thin lines along the edges of the vessel show the vessel outline, and steering is adjusted so the angle correction follows the vessel.
- 5 Click **VFI Update** to place the Doppler gate at the highest velocity in the vessel.
- 6 **PS** is displayed on the monitor:

PS	113.46cm/s
ED	16.37cm/s
PI	2.44
RI	0.86

## Determining Average Volume Flow

**To determine average volume flow:**

- 1 With the settings listed above, click **Auto Vol Flow**.  
The Doppler gate opens to span the entire vessel, and calipers are set to measure the diameter of the vessel.
- 2 **VF** is displayed in ml/minute on the monitor, along with the **VF Area** and the **VF Dia** (Diameter):

PS	116.82cm/s
ED	29.52cm/s
PI	1.91
RI	0.75
VF	452.27ml/min
VF Area	0.36cm <sup>2</sup>
VF Dia	6.79mm

**Note:** *If you are measuring volume flow through the portal vein, you must do so in a zoomed image.*

## Outline of VFI Workflow

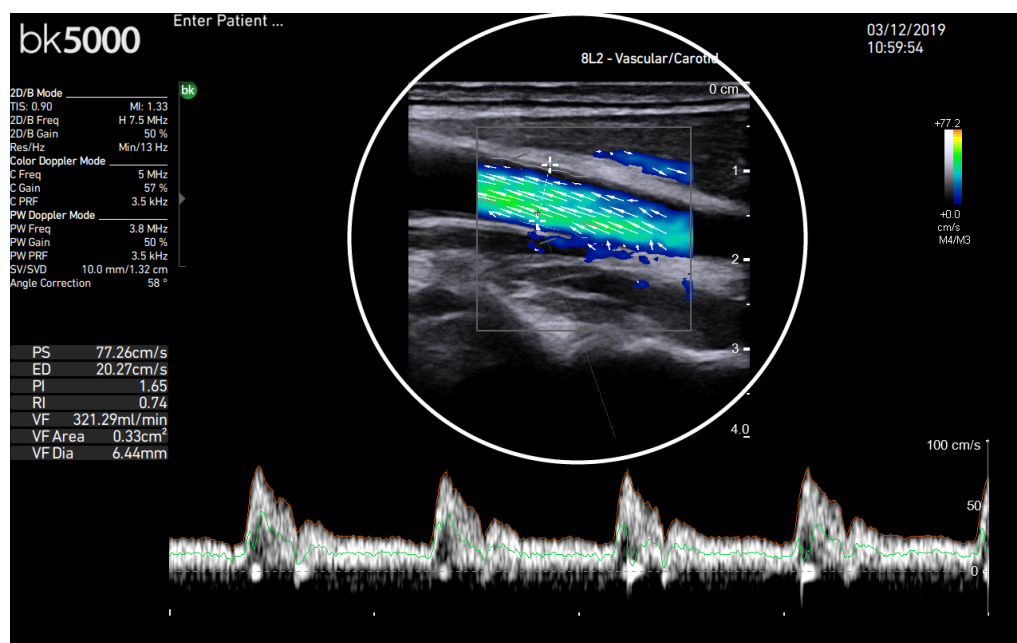


Figure 10-5. Outline of VFI workflow with 8L2 transducer

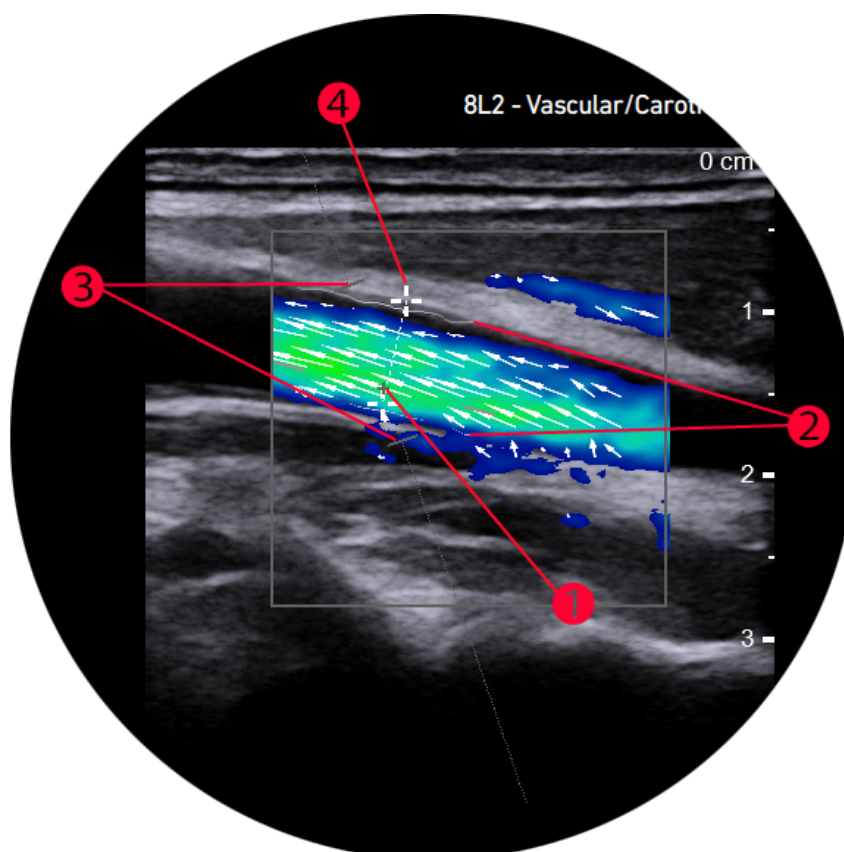


Figure 10-6. Zoomed VFI workflow

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> POI (highest velocity in vessel) | <b>3</b> Doppler gate                |
| <b>2</b> Vessel outline                   | <b>4</b> Calipers to measure vessel. |

## Biopsy

**NOTE:** Before you perform any puncture procedure, including brachytherapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.

### To display a puncture line on the image for biopsy guidance:

Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard:  or click **Biopsy** on the **Image** tab.

Remember to check that you are using the correct needle guide. The number of the needle guide is displayed on the monitor. Make sure the number corresponds to the guide you are using.

For better needle visualization see “Needle Enhancement” on page 78.

**NOTE:** If the image depth is set very low (to see tissue close to the transducer with high magnification), the needle tip echo can be outside the displayed image area. To see the needle tip in this case, zoom out so the full needle path is visible or pan the image to the side (to keep the high magnification).

## Annotations - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

Labels, bodymarks, and arrows are activated from the **Labels** and **Bodymarks** tabs to the left of the workspace.

### Labels



Figure 10-7. Label selector

#### To select a label:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click on the arrow in the right of the label selector to see all labels.
- 4 Select the label by clicking it.
- 5 Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are on the same background..

#### Type and edit your own labels on screen:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.
- 2 Click to accept the label text and position.

#### To move or edit a label:

- 1 To move a label that is on the image, click the label to select it, and use the trackball to move it.
- 2 To edit a label on the image, click the label. (Label turns green).  
You can only edit your own labels.
- 3 Use backspace to move through the label and edit it.

#### To remove a label:

- Long click the label you want to remove (point at it and press the **Select** key for more than 1 second).

#### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click on **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

## Bodymarks

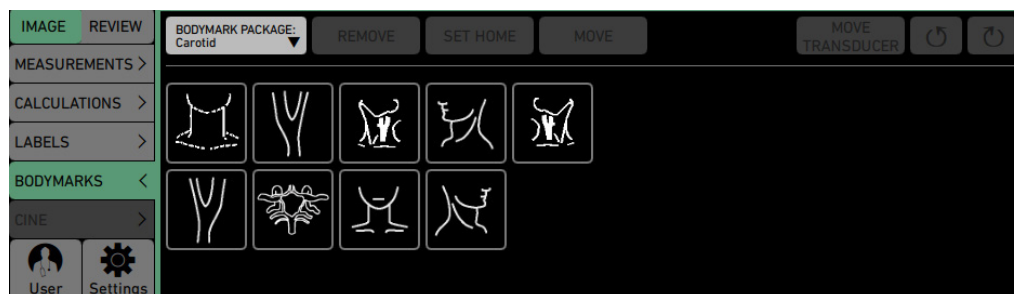


Figure 10-8. Bodymark selector

#### To place a bodymark on the image:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click to select the bodymark you want. (If you do not see the one you want, click the arrows to see more pages with bodymarks. This only works if there are more) The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.
- 4 Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.



- 5 Use the trackball to select and move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

#### **To move a bodymark:**

- 1 Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2 Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

#### **To replace a bodymark:**

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

#### **To delete a bodymark from the monitor:**

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

### **Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator**

#### **To adjust the imaging plane indicator:**

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1 Drag the imaging plane indicator with the trackball.
- 2 Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3 Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

### **Arrows**

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

#### **To place an arrow on the image:**

- 1 Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2 Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.
- 3 Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.
- 4 You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

### **Measurements and Calculations**

Measurements are generic measurements that you can do on any region of interest. Calculations are predefined measurements intended for measuring organs or ROIs within a particular preset.

For detailed instructions about using the measuring tools, see “Making Measurements” on page 47.

## Doppler Measurements

### Leg Veins (Peripheral Vascular preset)

- 1 In Doppler mode, freeze the image with the Doppler spectrum.
- 2 In the **Group** dropdown menu, select **Valve Closure Time**.
- 3 Select measurement, for example **Lt CFV VCT**.
- 4 Place first caliper at the beginning of reflux and click.
- 5 Place second caliper at end of reflux and click.  
Vessel closure time is displayed.

### Leg Arteries (Peripheral Vascular preset)

- 1 In Doppler mode, freeze the image with the Doppler spectrum.
- 2 In the **Group** dropdown menu, select **LE Arterial Doppler**.
- 3 Select measurement, for example **Lt Common IA**.
- 4 Place cursor at peak systole and click.  
Peak systolic velocity (PS) is displayed.

## Using Reports

### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the **Images** tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

### Printing a report:

- Click **Print** to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

### Saving a report as images:

- Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.

- 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.  
or  
Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

## Capturing Images

### Capturing Frozen Images

#### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.  
Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

### Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

#### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

## Copying and Archiving

### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

## Printing Images

### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.

#### To open a thumbnail image and then print it:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press the **Print** key.

## Customization Examples

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

#### To save a preset:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either Review or Report.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on Save Preset.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

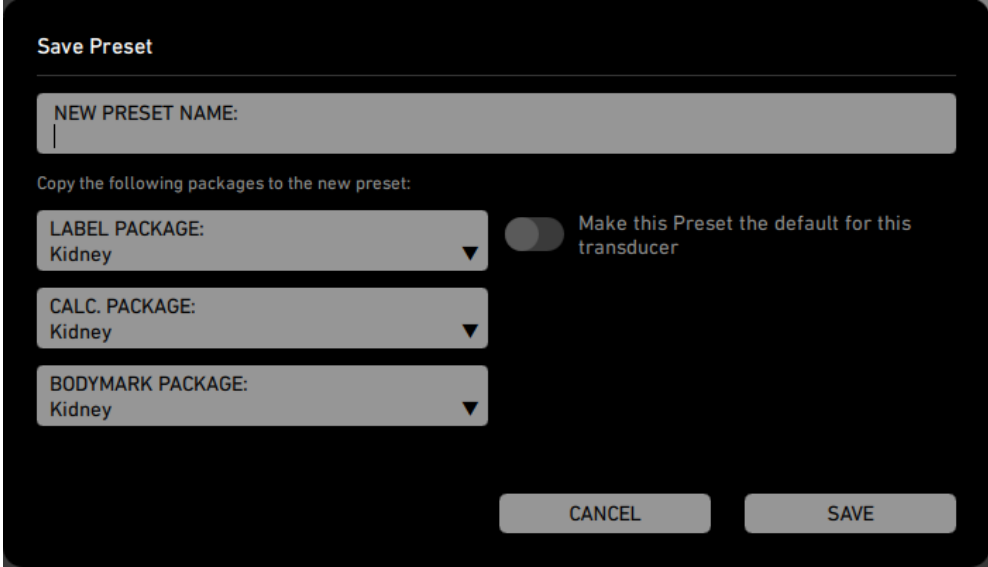


Figure 10-9. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

### Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click on the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Links to Additional Information

For more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”).
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”).
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”).
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”).
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”).
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”).
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”).
- Setting up and Customizing the System (including creating custom keys on the keyboard) (Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”).

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)* on the *User Documentation CD*.



# Chapter 11

## MSK and Nerve Chapter

---

This chapter contains information useful for basic musculoskeletal and nerve imaging.

Important:

Read *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before using the system.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient – Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window.
- 3** Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

### Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, select the appropriate **Exam Type** and **Preset**. These will vary with each transducer.



Figure 11-1. Preset Window for 5P1

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-Mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

### Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

#### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.

#### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

#### To remove a split:

- Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.



## M-Mode

There is no M-mode key on the keyboard.

M-mode can only be used in combination with 2D. Selecting any other mode will turn off M-mode.

### To turn M-mode on or off:

- Click the **M** tab in the workspace.
- Adjust sweep speed by clicking the **Sweep Speed** button and selecting the required value.

## Color Mode (CFM)

### To use Color mode:

- 1 Press **Color Mode** key on keyboard, or click **Color** tab on monitor.  
Color box is active (green color) and can be moved with trackball.
- 2 To resize the color box and keep the default shape, use the **+ /-** key.
- 3 To decrease the color box width, click to deactivate the size cursor, then click on a corner of the box and drag the corner.
- 4 Click when you are finished changing the color box.

### Color gain:

- Adjust color gain by *turning* the **Color Mode** key.

### Scale:

- Change PRF with the **Scale** keyboard key or **Scale** screen button.

## Doppler Mode

When you turn Doppler mode on, 2D must be imaging.

### To use Doppler mode:

- 1 Press the **Doppler Mode** or click on the PW tab in the workspace.  
The Doppler indicator (green), including both the Doppler line and the Doppler gate, appears superimposed on the 2D image and the Doppler spectrum appears.
- 2 To position the Doppler gate on a 2D image, use the trackball.
- 3 To resize the Doppler gate, use the **+/-** key.
- 4 To adjust the angle, use the **Angle Correct** toggle.  
In Doppler mode, this control will also be available when measuring.

## Volume Flow

### To use Volume Flow:

- 1 In PW Doppler, click on **Volume Flow** measurement.  
Calipers appear to measure the diameter of the vessel, then vertical measurement lines appear on the Doppler spectral trace.

- Place the first one at the beginning of a cardiac cycle and then place the second one farther along the spectral trace to include at least two cardiac cycles.  
Volume flow rate appears in ml/min.

## Biopsy

**NOTE:** Before you perform any puncture procedure, including brachytherapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.

### To display a puncture line on the image for biopsy guidance:

Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard:  or click **Biopsy** on the **Image** tab.

Remember to check that you are using the correct needle guide. The number of the needle guide is displayed on the monitor. Make sure the number corresponds to the guide you are using.

For better needle visualization see “Needle Enhancement” on page 78.

**NOTE:** If the image depth is set very low (to see tissue close to the transducer with high magnification), the needle tip echo can be outside the displayed image area. To see the needle tip in this case, zoom out so the full needle path is visible or pan the image to the side (to keep the high magnification).

## Annotations - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

Labels, bodymarks, and arrows are activated from the **Labels** and **Bodymarks** tabs to the left of the workspace.

### Labels

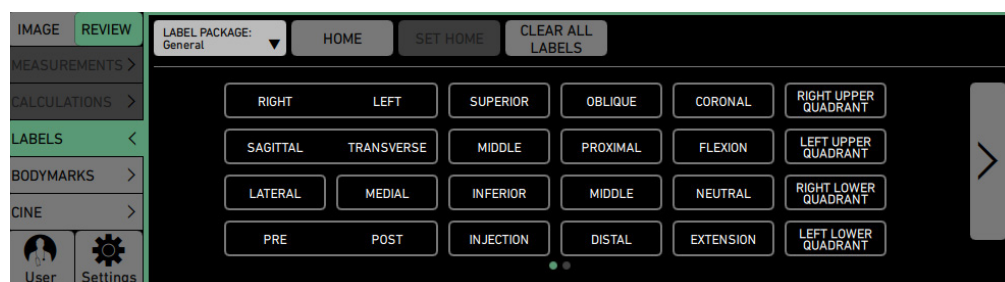


Figure 11-2. Label selector for MSK

- To select a label:
- In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.
- From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- Click on the arrow in the right of the label selector to see all labels.
- Select the label by clicking it.
- Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are on the same background..

### Type and edit your own labels on screen:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.
- 2 Click to accept the label text and position.

### To move or edit a label:

- 1 To move a label that is on the image, click the label to select it, and use the trackball to move it.
- 2 To edit a label on the image, click the label. (Label turns green).  
You can only edit your own labels.
- 3 Use backspace to move through the label and edit it.

### To remove a label:

- Long click the label you want to remove (point at it and press the **Select** key for more than 1 second).

### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click on **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

## Bodymarks

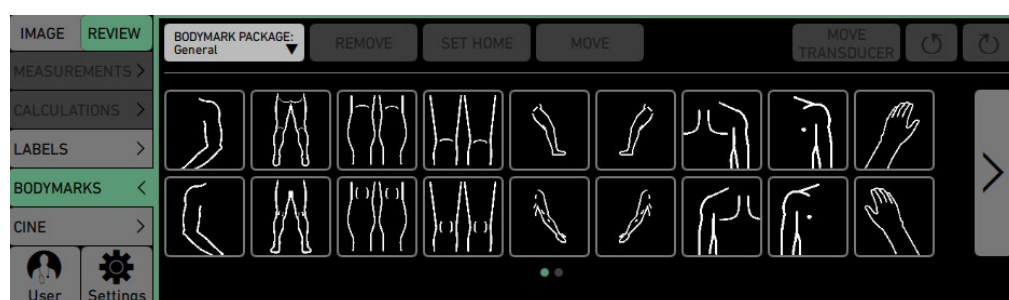


Figure 11-3. Bodymark selector for MSK

### To place a bodymark on the image:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click to select the bodymark you want. (If you do not see the one you want, click the arrows to see more pages with bodymarks. This only works if there are more) The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.

- 4 Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.
- 5 Use the trackball to select and move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

#### **To move a bodymark:**

- 1 Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2 Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

#### **To replace a bodymark:**

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

#### **To delete a bodymark from the monitor:**

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

### **Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator**

#### **To adjust the imaging plane indicator:**

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1 Drag the imaging plane indicator with the trackball.
- 2 Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3 Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

### **Arrows**

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

#### **To place an arrow on the image:**

- 1 Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2 Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.
- 3 Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.
- 4 You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

## Measurements and Calculations

Measurements are generic measurements that you can do on any region of interest. Calculations are predefined measurements intended for measuring organs or ROIs within a particular preset.

For detailed instructions about using the measuring tools, see “Making Measurements” on page 47.

## Using Reports

### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the **Images** tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

### Printing a report:

- Click **Print** to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

### Saving a report as images:

- 1 Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.
- 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.

or

Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

### Capturing Images

#### Capturing Frozen Images

#### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.

Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

## Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

## Copying and Archiving

### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

## Printing Images

### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.

#### To open a thumbnail image and then print it:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press **Print** key.

## Customization Examples

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

#### To save a preset:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either **Review** or **Report**.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on **Save Preset**.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

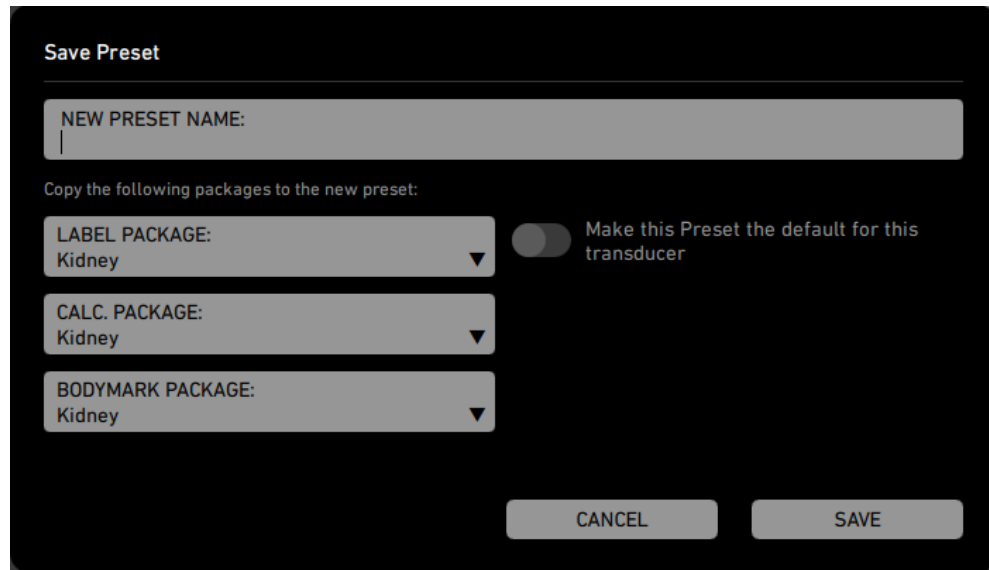


Figure 11-4. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click on the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Links to Additional Information

For more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”).
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”).
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”).
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”).
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”).
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”).
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”).
- Setting up and Customizing the System (including creating custom keys on the keyboard) (Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”).

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)* on the *User Documentation CD*.





# Chapter 12

## Cardiac Chapter

---

This chapter contains information useful for basic cardiac imaging including:

- Basic Cardiac imaging
- Emergency medicine cardiac imaging (FATE)

Important:

Please see *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before system use.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient – Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- FATE – Focus Assessed Transthoracic Echocardiography
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window.
- 3** Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

### Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, select the appropriate **Exam Type** and **Preset**. These will vary with each transducer.



Figure 12-1. Preset Window for 5P1

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

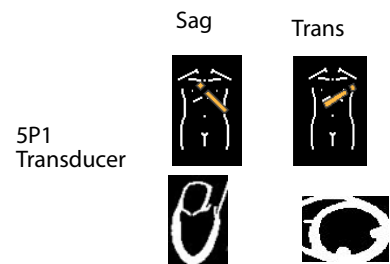
- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

### Transducer Orientation

#### 5P1 Transducer

- Sag – Transducer mark to right shoulder
- Trans – Mark to left shoulder



### Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

#### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side or Top/Bottom**.

#### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

#### To remove a split:

- Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.

## M-Mode

There is no M-mode key on the keyboard.

M-mode can only be used in combination with 2D. Selecting any other mode will turn off M-mode.

#### To turn M-mode on or off:

- Click the **M** tab in the workspace.
- Adjust sweep speed by clicking the **Sweep Speed** button and selecting the required value.

## Color Mode (CFM)

#### To use Color mode:

- 1 Press **Color Mode** key on keyboard, or click **Color** tab on monitor.  
Color box is active (green color) and can be moved with trackball.
- 2 To resize the color box and keep the default shape, use the **+ /-** key.
- 3 To decrease the color box width, click to deactivate the size cursor, then click on a corner of the box and drag the corner.
- 4 Click when you are finished changing the color box.

#### Scale:

- Change PRF with the **Scale** keyboard key or **Scale** screen button.

## Doppler Mode

#### To use Doppler mode:

- 1 Press **Doppler Mode** key on keyboard, or click **PW** tab on monitor.  
Doppler sample gate is active (green). Move with trackball.
- 2 Adjust size of Doppler gate with the **+/-** key
- 3 Adjust gain by turning **Doppler Mode** key.
- 4 Press the **Doppler Angle** key to activate the Doppler angle control, then adjust the angle with the **+/-** key or trackball.

## Auto Control of Baseline and Scale

Click **Auto** to have the system adjust baseline and scale (PRF) automatically. The adjustment requires a few vascular cycles before the adjustment is complete.

## Continuous Doppler (CW)

### To start Continuous Doppler:

- 1 Click the **CW tab**.  
The CW Doppler line appears superimposed on the 2D image.
- 2 Drag the line to the position you want.

See also Chapter 8, “Continuous Wave Doppler Mode” on page 91.

## Volume Flow

### To use Volume Flow:

- 1 In PW/CW Doppler, click on **Volume Flow** measurement.  
Calipers appear to measure the diameter of the vessel, then vertical measurement lines appear on the Doppler spectral trace.
- 2 Place the first one at the beginning of a cardiac cycle and then place the second one farther along the spectral trace to include at least two cardiac cycles.  
Volume flow rate appears in ml/min.

## Annotations - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

Labels, bodymarks, and arrows are activated from the **Labels** and **Bodymarks** tabs to the left of the workspace.

## Labels

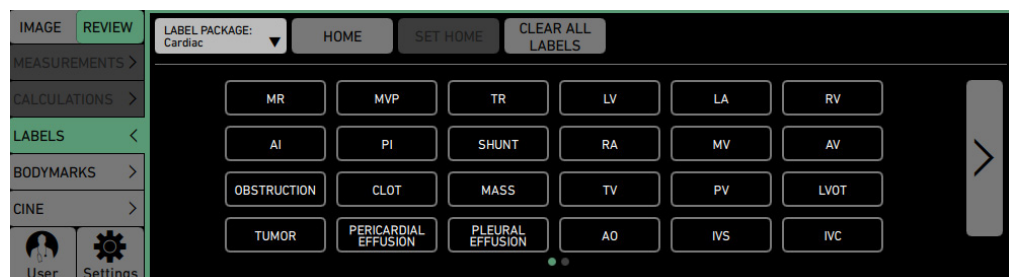


Figure 12-2. Label selector for Cardiac

### To select a label:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click on the arrow in the right of the label selector to see all labels.
- 4 Select the label by clicking it.

- 5 Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are on the same background..

### Type and edit your own labels on screen:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.
- 2 Click to accept the label text and position.

### To move or edit a label:

- 1 To move a label that is on the image, click the label to select it, and use the trackball to move it.
- 2 To edit a label on the image, click the label. (Label turns green).  
You can only edit your own labels.
- 3 Use backspace to move through the label and edit it.

### To remove a label:

- Long click the label you want to remove (point at it and press the **Select** key for more than 1 second).

### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click on **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

## Bodymarks

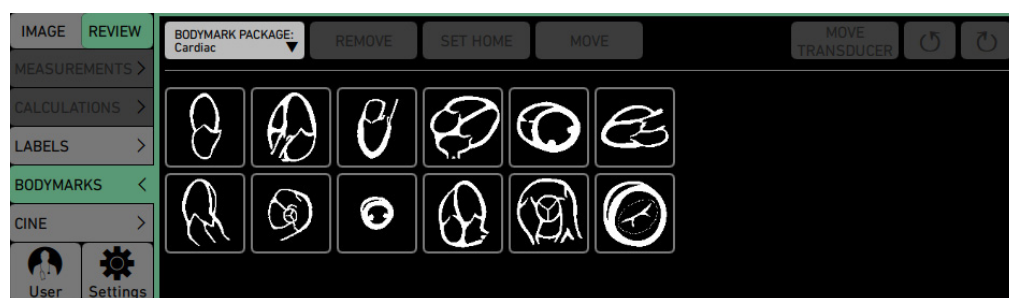


Figure 12-3. Bodymark selector for Cardiac

### To place a bodymark on the image:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.

- 3 Click to select the bodymark you want. (If you do not see the one you want, click the arrows to see more pages with bodymarks. This only works if there are more) The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.
- 4 Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.
- 5 Use the trackball to select and move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

#### **To move a bodymark:**

- 1 Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2 Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

#### **To replace a bodymark:**

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

#### **To delete a bodymark from the monitor:**

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

### **Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator**

#### **To adjust the imaging plane indicator:**

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1 Drag the imaging plane indicator with the trackball.
- 2 Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3 Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

### **Arrows**

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

#### **To place an arrow on the image:**

- 1 Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2 Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.
- 3 Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.
- 4 You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

## Measurements and Calculations

Measurements are generic measurements that you can do on any region of interest. Calculations are predefined measurements intended for measuring organs or ROIs within a particular preset.

For detailed instructions about using the measuring tools, see “Making Measurements” on page 47.

### Cardiac LV Protocol (Left Ventricular Protocol)

#### 2D Mode/M-Mode

- 1** Freeze the image, and click on the **Calculations** tab.
  - 2** Click LV Protocol
  - 3** Measure the following in diastole:
    - IVS d (Interventricular Septum in diastole)
    - LVD d (Left Ventricular Diameter in diastole)
    - LVPW d (Left Ventricular Posterior Wall in diastole)
  - 4** Then measure the following in systole:
    - IVS s (Interventricular Septum in systole)
    - LVD s (Left Ventricular Diameter in systole)
    - LVPW s (Left Ventricular Posterior Wall in systole)
- These calculations are displayed on the monitor:
- EdV (End Diastolic Volume)
  - EsV (End Systolic Volume)
  - LVM (Left Ventricular Mass)
  - FS (Fractional Shortening)
  - EF (Ejection Fraction)
  - SV (Stroke Volume)

LV		
■	IVSd	8.83mm
■	LVDd	51.94mm
■	LVPWd	12.22mm
■	LVM	207.47g
■	EdV	129.14ml
■	IVSs	13.57mm
■	LVDs	38.42mm
■	LVPWs	18.32mm
■	EsV	63.59ml
	EF	50.76%
	SV	65.55ml
	FS	26.03%

Figure 12-4. Measurement Data for LV Protocol

## HR (Heart Rate)

### In M-mode:/Doppler Mode:

- 1 Freeze the image and click on **Measurements**:
- 2 Click on **HR**.  
A line caliper appears on the image.
- 3 Drag this to the position you want. Click.  
Another line caliper appears.
- 4 Drag it to the end of the defined number of HR cycles and click.

The heart rate is displayed on the monitor.

## Cardiac Output

### Doppler Mode:

- 1 Freeze the image and click on **Calculations**.
- 2 Click **CO Protocol**.
- 3 Measure LVOT diameter. The measurement is displayed on the monitor.
- 4 Trace the VTI. **LVOTVTI** is displayed on the monitor.
- 5 Measure HR over two cycles.  
**HR, CO, and SV** are displayed monitor:





	LVOTDs	37.03mm
	LVOTVTI	16.60cm
	HR	57b/min
	CO	10.26l/min
	SV	178.77ml

Figure 12-5. Measurement Data for Cardiac Output

## FATE (Focus Assessed Transthoracic Echocardiography)

FATE calculations are available for **M-mode** only.

### FATE Measurements

#### MSS (Mitral Septal Separation)

MSS is used as an M-mode echocardiographic indicator of normal or abnormal left ventricular ejection fraction.

#### Parasternal Long Axis View - M-Mode line through RV, IVS, MV end point

##### To measure:

- 1 Freeze the image and click **Calculations**.
- 2 On the Group dropdown, select **FATE**.
- 3 Click **MSS**.
- 4 Measure the distance between MV e-point and IVS in systole.  
The MSS calculation appears on the monitor.

#### MAPSE Mitral Annular Plane Systolic Excursion

MAPSE is assessed with M-mode in apical four-chamber view, placing the M-mode beam on the lateral mitral annulus. Measurement takes place from the end of diastole, until maximal expansion in systole.

##### To measure MAPSE:

- 1 Freeze the image and click **Calculations**.
- 2 On the Group dropdown, select **FATE**.
- 3 Click **MAPSE**.
- 4 Place the caliper at the highest systolic excursion and click.
- 5 Place the next caliper at the lowest diastolic excursion and click.  
The vertical distance is now measured between the two calipers.

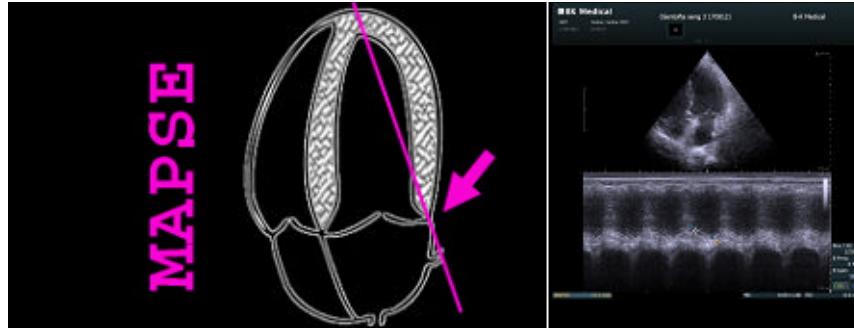


Figure 12-6. Measuring MAPSE in the FATE preset.

### TAPSE Tricuspid Annular Plane Systolic Excursion

TAPSE can be assessed with M-mode, in the apical four-chamber view, placing the M-mode beam on the lateral Tricuspid annulus, measuring the distance of tricuspid annular movement between end diastole to end systole.

#### To measure TAPSE:

- 1 Freeze the image and click **Calculations**.
  - 2 On the Group dropdown, select **FATE**.
  - 3 Click **TAPSE**.
  - 4 Place the caliper at the highest systolic excursion and click.
  - 5 Place the next caliper at the lowest diastolic excursion and click.
- The vertical distance is now measured between the two calipers.

## Using Reports

#### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the **Images** tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

#### Printing a report:

- Click **Print** to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

#### Saving a report as images:

- 1 Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.
  - 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.
- or

Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

### Capturing Images

#### Capturing Frozen Images

#### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.  
Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

#### Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

#### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

### Copying and Archiving

#### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

### Printing Images

#### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

#### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.

**To open a thumbnail image and then print it:**

- 1 Click the Review tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press **Print** key.

## Customization Example

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

**To save a preset:**

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either Review or Report.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on Save Preset.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

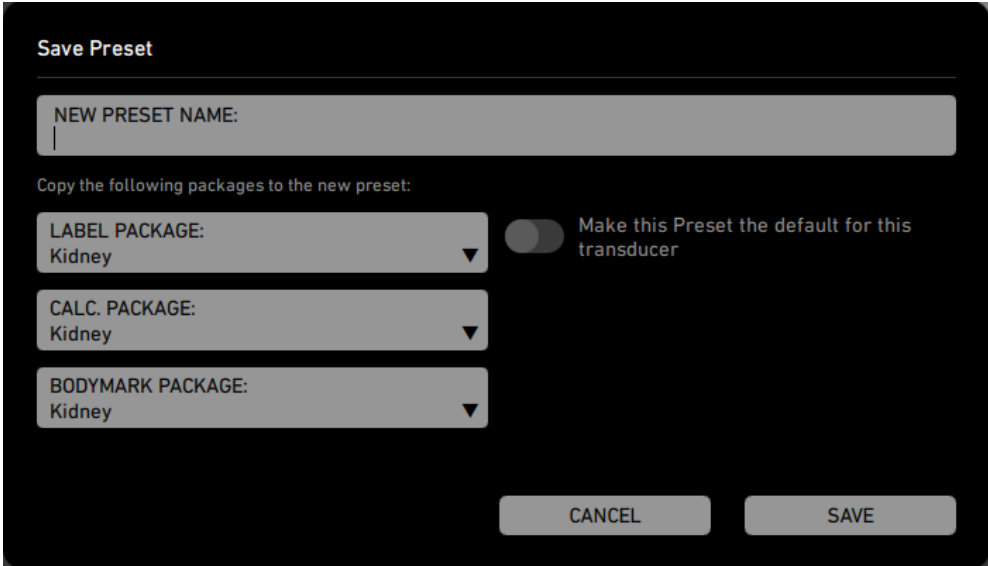


Figure 12-7. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

### Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click on the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Links to Additional Information

For more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”).
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”).
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”).
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”).
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”).
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”).
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”).
- Setting up and Customizing the System (including creating custom keys on the keyboard) (Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”).

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)* on the *User Documentation CD*.



# Chapter 13

## Urology Prostate Chapter

---

This chapter contains information useful for basic urology imaging, including prostate, abdomen, and small parts imaging. Small parts imaging includes breast, penile, testis, and thyroid imaging.

Important:

Please see *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before system use.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient – Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window.
- 3** Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

**NOTE:** *It is recommended to enter the PSA (Prostate Specific Antigen) before you image.*

### Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, click **Preset** and select the appropriate **Exam Type** and **Preset**. These will vary with each transducer.



Figure 13-1. Preset window for urology/prostate transducer.

- Prostate Small = 12 Mhz.
- Prostate Medium = 9 Mhz.
- Prostate Large = 6 Mhz.

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

### Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

#### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.

#### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

#### To remove a split:



Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.

## Color Mode (CFM)

### To use Color mode:

- 1 Press **Color Mode** key on keyboard, or click **Color** tab on monitor.  
Color box is active (green color) and can be moved with trackball.
- 2 To resize the color box and keep the default shape, use the **+/-** key.
- 3 To decrease the color box width, click to deactivate the size cursor, then click on a corner of the box and drag the corner.
- 4 Click when you are finished changing the color box.

### Color gain:

- Adjust color gain by *turning* the **Color Mode** key.

### Scale:

- Change PRF with the **Scale** keyboard key or **Scale** screen button.

## Doppler Mode

When you turn Doppler mode on, 2D must be imaging.

### To use Doppler mode:

- 1 Press the **Doppler Mode** or click on the PW tab in the workspace.  
The Doppler indicator (green), including both the Doppler line and the Doppler gate, appears superimposed on the 2D image and the Doppler spectrum appears.
- 2 To position the Doppler gate on a 2D image, use the trackball.
- 3 To resize the Doppler gate, use the **+/-** key.
- 4 To adjust the angle, use the **Angle Correct** toggle.  
In Doppler mode, this control will also be available when measuring.

## Volume Flow

### To use Volume Flow:

- 1 In PW Doppler, click on **Volume Flow** measurement.  
Calipers appear to measure the diameter of the vessel, then vertical measurement lines appear on the Doppler spectral trace.  
Place the first one at the beginning of a cardiac cycle and then place the second one farther along the spectral trace to include at least two cardiac cycles.  
Volume flow rate appears in ml/min.

## To Change Imaging Planes

If you are using a transducer with more than one plane, you can select the imaging plane (**T** for transverse, **S** for sagittal, or **E** for endfire). The current imaging plane (**T**, **S**, or **E**) is displayed at the top of the monitor next to the transducer name.

### To select the imaging plane:

- Press the appropriate button on the transducer. For details, see the user guide for the transducer.

or

- Press the **Scanning Plane**  key.

**NOTE:** When you change image orientation U/D, you may need to adjust the TGC settings for the 2D image. See “TGC” on page 71.

## Biopsy

**NOTE:** Before you perform any puncture procedure, including brachytherapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.

### To display a puncture line on the image for biopsy guidance:

Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard:  or click **Biopsy** on the **Image** tab.

Remember to check that you are using the correct needle guide. The number of the needle guide is displayed on the monitor. Make sure the number corresponds to the guide you are using.

For better needle visualization see “Needle Enhancement” on page 78.

**NOTE:** If the image depth is set very low (to see tissue close to the transducer with high magnification), the needle tip echo can be outside the displayed image area. To see the needle tip in this case, zoom out so the full needle path is visible or pan the image to the side (to keep the high magnification).

## Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

Labels, bodymarks, and arrows are activated from the **Labels** and **Bodymarks** tabs to the left of the workspace.

### Labels



Figure 13-2. Label selector

### To select a label:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.

- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click on the arrow in the right of the label selector to see all labels.
- 4 Select the label by clicking it.
- 5 Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

*You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place*

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are on the same background..

#### Type and edit your own labels on screen:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.
- 2 Click to accept the label text and position.

#### To move or edit a label:

- 1 To move a label that is on the image, click the label to select it, and use the trackball to move it.
- 2 To edit a label on the image, click the label. (Label turns green).  
You can only edit your own labels.
- 3 Use backspace to move through the label and edit it.

#### To remove a label:

- Long click the label you want to remove (point at it and press the **Select** key for more than 1 second).

#### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click on **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

## Bodymarks



Figure 13-3. Bodymark selector

#### To place a bodymark on the image:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.

- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click to select the bodymark you want. (If you do not see the one you want, click the arrows to see more pages with bodymarks. This only works if there are more) The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.
- 4 Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.
- 5 Use the trackball to select and move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

#### **To move a bodymark:**

- 1 Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2 Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

#### **To replace a bodymark:**

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

#### **To delete a bodymark from the monitor:**

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

### **Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator**

#### **To adjust the imaging plane indicator:**

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1 Drag the imaging plane indicator with the trackball.
- 2 Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3 Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

### **Arrows**

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

#### **To place an arrow on the image:**

- 1 Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2 Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.
- 3 Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.
- 4 You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

## Measurements and Calculations

Measurements are generic measurements that you can do on any region of interest. Calculations are predefined measurements intended for measuring organs or ROIs within a particular preset.

For detailed instructions about using the measuring tools, see “Making Measurements” on page 47.

### Calculation of Prostate Volume

**To measure prostate volume (width, height, and length):**

- 1** Freeze the image and click **Calculations**.
- 2** Click on **Prostate V W\*H\*L**.  
The width (W) caliper appears automatically.
- 3** Position the first caliper and click.
- 4** Position the second caliper and click.  
The height (H) caliper appears automatically.
- 5** Repeat measurement.  
Length (L), the last set of measurements, appears automatically.
- 6** Repeat measurement.

- 7 When you have finished measuring, the volume calculation appears automatically.

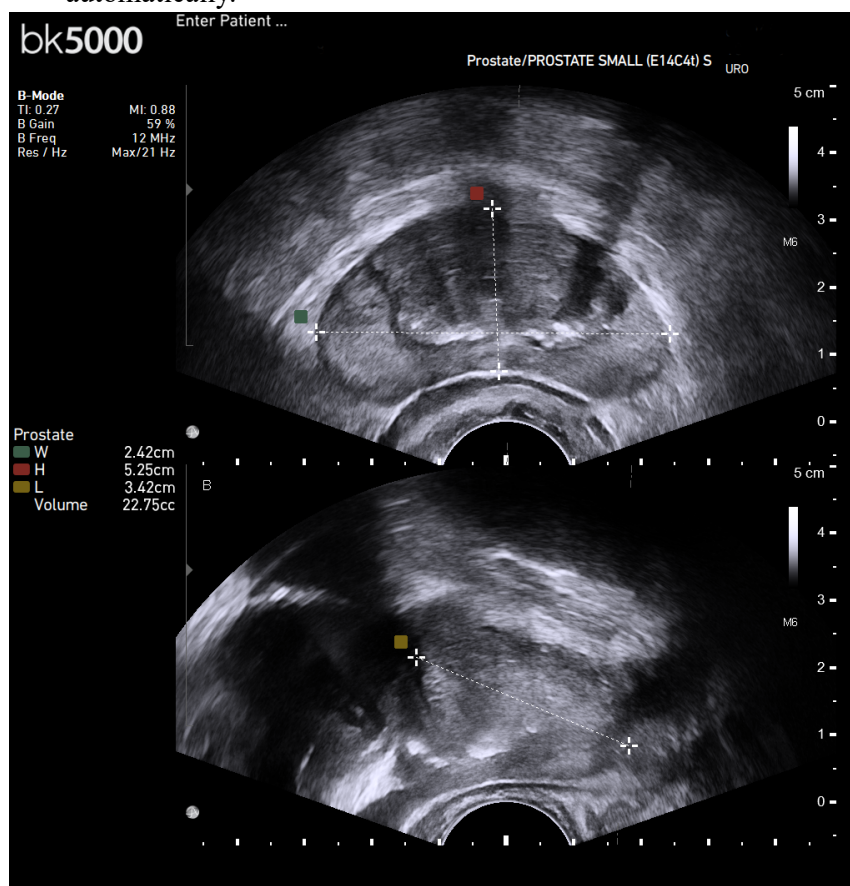


Figure 13-4. Prostate volume in split screen view

#### PSAD measurements:

The PSAD (Prostate Specific Antigen Density) will be calculated after the PSA has been entered and prostate volume has been measured.

### Calculation of Breast Lesion Volume

#### To measure lesion volume (width, height, and length):

- 1 Freeze the image and click **Calculations**.
- 2 On the Group dropdown, select **Right** or **Left** (this procedure uses Left)
- 3 Click on **Lt Lesion V W\*H\*L**.  
The width (W) caliper appears automatically.
- 4 Position the first caliper and click.
- 5 Position the second caliper and click.  
The height (H) caliper appears automatically.
- 6 Repeat measurement.  
Length (L), the last set of measurements, appears automatically.

- 7 Repeat measurement. When you have finished measuring, the volume calculation appears on the monitor.

## Calculation of Kidney Volume

### To measure kidney volume (width, height, and length):

- 1 Freeze the image and click **Calculations**.
- 2 In the **Calc. Package Kidney**, select (e.g.) **Right Kidney** or **Left**
- 3 Click on **Rt Kidney V W\*H\*L**.  
The width (W) caliper appears automatically.
- 4 Position the first caliper and click.
- 5 Position the second caliper and click.  
The height (H) caliper appears automatically.
- 6 Repeat measurement.  
Length (L), the last set of measurements, appears automatically.
- 7 Repeat measurement. When you have finished measuring, the volume calculation appears on the monitor.

### To erase measurements:

- 1 Hover cursor to the left of the measurement name, for example “Prostate”.  
Trash can icon appears.
- 2 Click trash can icon to erase measurement.

## Using Reports

### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the **Images** tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

### Printing a report:

- Click **Print** to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

### Saving a report as images:

- 1 Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.
  - 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.
- or

Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

### Capturing Images

#### Capturing Frozen Images

#### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.  
Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

#### Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

#### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

### Copying and Archiving

#### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

### Printing Images

#### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

#### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.



**To open a thumbnail image and then print it:**

- 1 Click the Review tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press the **Print** key.

## Customization Example

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

**To save a preset:**

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either Review or Report.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on Save Preset.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

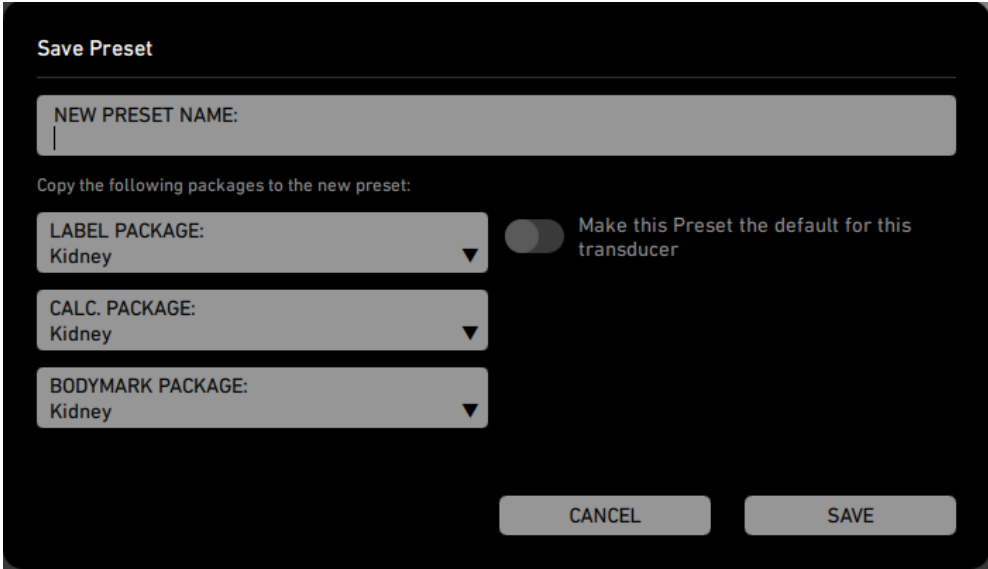


Figure 13-5. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

### Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Links to Additional Information

For more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”).
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”).
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”).
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”).
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”).
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”).
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”).
- Setting up and Customizing the System (including creating custom keys on the keyboard) (Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”).

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*.

# Chapter 14

## Brachytherapy Chapter

---

This chapter contains information useful for basic brachytherapy imaging.

The Brachytherapy Exam Type is designed for ultrasound-guided brachytherapy and cryotherapy for prostate cancer. This Exam Type helps you measure the volume of the prostate.

**NOTE:** *If you have the VariSeed or Live Image Transfer licenses activated, the image size is locked by default for the Brachytherapy Exam Type.*

**NOTE:** *Before you perform any puncture procedure, including brachytherapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.*

For information about calculating PSAD see the Urology Prostate Chapter.

Important:

Please see *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before system use.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient – Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window.
- 3** Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

**NOTE:** *It is recommended to enter the PSA (Prostate Specific Antigen) before you image.*

The **Patient** window for this Exam Type contains a PSA field for PSA Score parameters:

Parameter	Range allowed
PSA	0 – 1000
Gleason	2 – 10

Table 14-1. Brachy parameters in the Patient window.

## Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, click **Preset** and select the appropriate **Exam Type** and **Preset**. These will vary with each transducer.

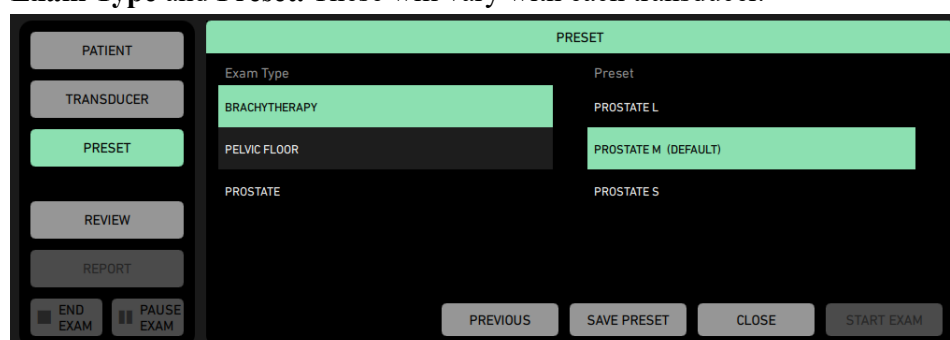


Figure 14-1. Preset window for E14C4t.

- Prostate Small = 12 Mhz.
- Prostate Medium = 9 Mhz.
- Prostate Large = 6 Mhz.

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

## Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.

### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

### To remove a split:

Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.

## To Change Imaging Planes

If you are using a transducer with more than one plane, you can select the imaging plane (**T** for transverse or **S** for sagittal). The current imaging plane (**T** or **S**) is displayed at the top of the monitor next to the transducer name.

### To select the imaging plane:

- Press the appropriate button on the transducer. For details, see the user guide for the transducer.

or

- Press the **Scanning Plane**  key.

**NOTE:** When you change image orientation U/D, you may need to adjust the TGC settings for the 2D image. See “TGC” on page 71.

## Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

Labels, bodymarks, and arrows are activated from the **Labels** and **Bodymarks** tabs to the left of the workspace.

### Labels



Figure 14-2. Label selector

### To select a label:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click on the arrow in the right of the label selector to see all labels.
- 4 Select the label by clicking it.
- 5 Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

*You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place*

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are on the same background..

### Type and edit your own labels on screen:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.
- 2 Click to accept the label text and position.

### To move or edit a label:

- 1 To move a label that is on the image, click the label to select it, and use the trackball to move it.
- 2 To edit a label on the image, click the label. (Label turns green).  
You can only edit your own labels.
- 3 Use backspace to move through the label and edit it.

### To remove a label:

- Long click the label you want to remove (point at it and press the **Select** key for more than 1 second).

### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click on **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

## Bodymarks

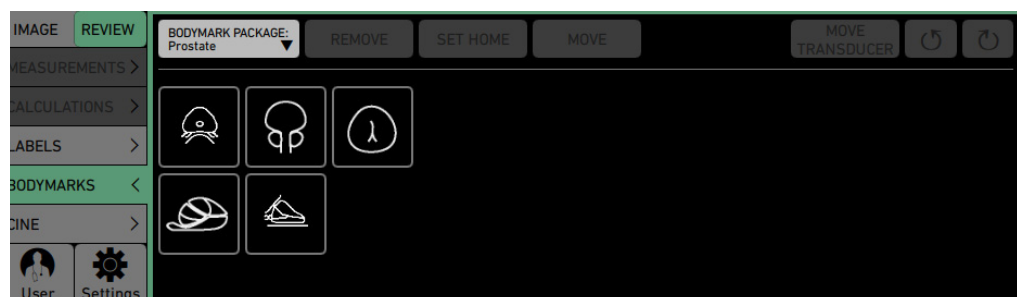


Figure 14-3. Bodymark selector

### **To place a bodymark on the image:**

- 1** In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.
- 2** From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.
- 3** Click to select the bodymark you want. (If you do not see the one you want, click the arrows to see more pages with bodymarks. This only works if there are more) The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.
- 4** Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.
- 5** Use the trackball to select and move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

### **To move a bodymark:**

- 1** Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2** Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

### **To replace a bodymark:**

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

### **To delete a bodymark from the monitor:**

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

## **Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator**

### **To adjust the imaging plane indicator:**

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1** Drag the imaging plane indicator with the trackball.
- 2** Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3** Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

## **Arrows**

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

### **To place an arrow on the image:**

- 1** Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2** Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.

**3** Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.

**4** You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

## Measurements and Calculations

Measurements are generic measurements that you can do on any region of interest. Calculations are predefined measurements intended for measuring organs or ROIs within a particular preset.

For detailed instructions about using the measuring tools, see “Making Measurements” on page 47.

### Calculating Volumes

Organ volumes can be calculated in several ways. For the formulas used for each of these calculations, and information about their accuracy, see the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*.

**NOTE:** A volume calculation based on a measured ellipse is critically dependent on the axis of rotation that you choose. See page 52.

#### Planimetry (Contouring)

For this method, you record several parallel B-mode images that cover the organ to be measured. On each image, you draw a curve that traces the outline of the structure, thereby creating a set of parallel section measurements of the structure.

These parallel sections (the outline measurements) are used to estimate the volume of the structure based on several equally spaced slices.

The accuracy of this method depends on starting the measurements in the correct place. Start at one end of the organ, where the image shows an area of as close to 0 as possible. After each step, trace the outline of the structure on the image. The system calculates the volume of the structure between the starting point and each new image (see Fig 14-4). This is continued until the whole organ has been covered and a total volume obtained.

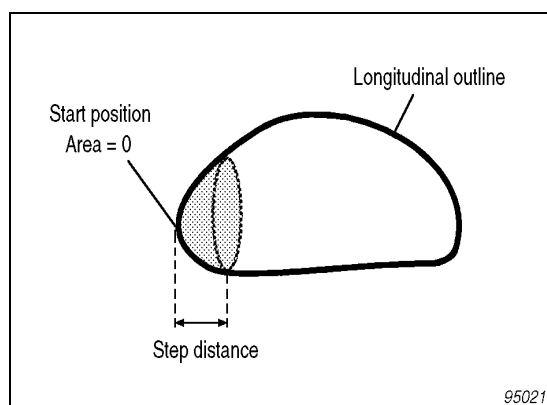


Figure 14-4. Longitudinal outline of organ showing the start position for planimetry.



Different stepping units to control the spacing between the sections are available for use with different transducers.

To use this method to calculate the volume of a particular organ, use the Planimetry (Ellipse) or Planimetry (Freehand) measurements in the submenu for that organ volume. The planimetry method is only available for the prostate and adenoma.

**To make a planimetry calculation:**

- 1 Record a 2D image at the far end of the organ.
- 2 Move the transducer back one step.
- 3 Freeze the image.
- 4 In the **Calculations** tab, click **Planimetry (Freehand)**.
- 5 Draw to outline the prostate.
- 6 Draw an outline around any other structures of interest, such as the rectal wall or urethra.
- 7 Unfreeze the image.
- 8 Repeat steps 2 through 6 until you have covered the entire organ. The step numbers and measurements will be registered on the monitor.  
The prostate volume is displayed (updated after each measurement is drawn) to the left of the image.

**PSAD measurements:**

The PSAD (Prostate Specific Antigen Density) will be calculated after the PSA has been entered and prostate volume has been measured.

**To erase measurements:**

- 1 Hover cursor to the left of the measurement name, for example “Prostate”.  
Trash can icon appears.
- 2 Click trash can icon to erase measurement.

## **Performing a Biopsy or Puncture Procedure (including Brachytherapy)**

**NOTE:** *It is important to verify that you are using the correct puncture guide. The number of the guide is displayed at the top of the image. Make sure the number corresponds to the guide you are using. If it does not, click the number on the monitor to select the proper needle guide.*

When you use a transducer (such as the E14CL4b for brachytherapy), a brachytherapy needle guide matrix (brachy matrix) is superimposed on the image.

**To superimpose a brachy matrix on an ultrasound image:**

- Press the **Puncture Guide** key.  
The default brachy matrix appears.

**To set a different brachy matrix to be the default:**

- After you have selected the brachy matrix you want (and made any other setup changes you want), save your settings as a new preset. Specify that you want the new setup to be your default. See “Saving a New Preset” on page 153.

### To select a different needle guide or brachy matrix:

- Click the **Needle Guide** button on the **Image** tab and select the new needle guide number or brachy matrix name.

### To highlight the dot on a brachy matrix where you expect to see the needle:

- Click one of the dots on the brachy matrix.  
A green square appears in its place.
- To highlight a different dot, click it. The previously highlighted dot returns to normal and the new one is highlighted.

### To remove the brachy matrix from the monitor:

- Click the **Biopsy** button or press the **Puncture Guide** key.

## Programmable Needle Guide

If you are using a programmable needle guide, you can change the setup to move it to the left or right or in or out.

## Brachy Ruler with Sagittal Plane Imaging

You can set up the system so that a brachy ruler is displayed when you image in the sagittal plane with the E14CL4b transducer, in situations where a brachy matrix appears in the transverse imaging view.

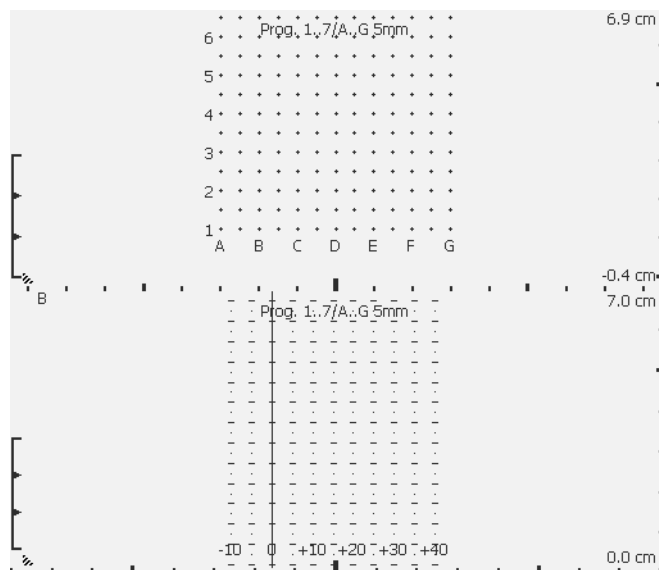


Figure 14-5. A split-screen view with transverse brachy matrix above and sagittal brachy ruler below. Ruler has vertical line to mark 0.

The sagittal brachy ruler is sometimes displayed with a 2-dimensional grid, to make it easier for you to see the horizontal position of the needle no matter where it is in the vertical direction.

### To move the ruler to the left or right:

- 1 Open the Needle Guide setting as described in “Matrix Alignment and Calibration” on page 274.

- 2 Click on the dropdown menu for **Move left/right** and select the preferred value.
- 3 Check **Display ruler on sagittal views**.

The vertical line disappears and the ruler markers appear in their new positions.

**NOTE:** By checking **Display vertical line with sagittal ruler**, you can set up the system so that a vertical 0 line is always visible, along with the markers as shown in Fig 14-5.

### User-Definable Brachy Matrix and Ruler

You can also define your own brachy matrix and ruler. See “User-Defined Matrices (including Brachy and Transperineal)” on page 270.

## Using Reports

### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the **Images** tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

### Printing a report:

- Click **Print** to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

### Saving a report as images:

- 1 Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.
- 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.

or

Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

## Capturing Images

### Capturing Frozen Images

#### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.  
Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

### Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

#### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

## Copying and Archiving

### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

## Printing Images

### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.

#### To open a thumbnail image and then print it:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press the **Print** key.

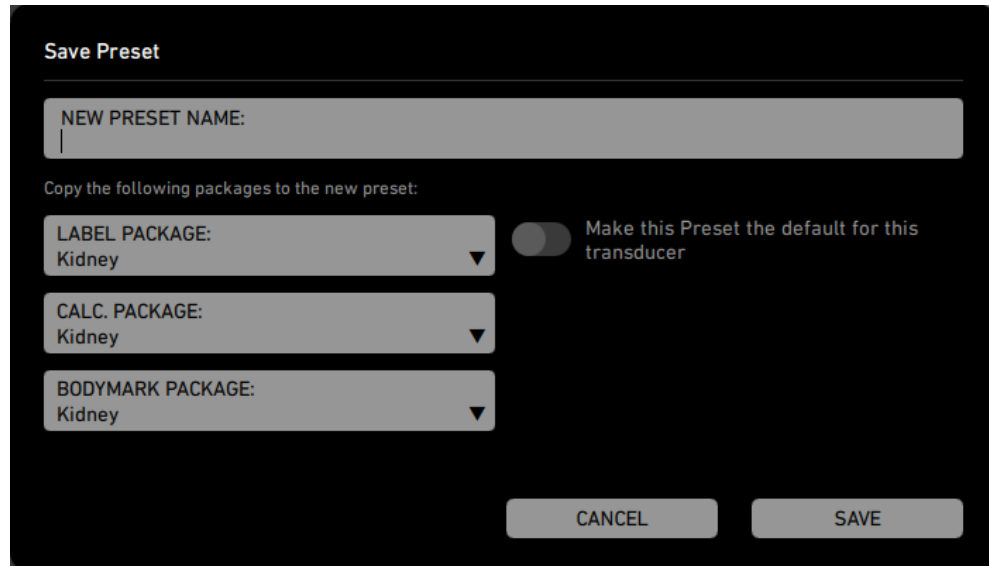
## Customization Example

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

**To save a preset:**

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either Review or Report.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on Save Preset.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.



*Figure 14-6. The Save Preset window.*

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## **Default Exam Types and Presets**

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Links to Additional Information

For more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”).
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”).
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”).
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”).
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”).
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”).
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”).
- Setting up and Customizing the System (including creating custom keys on the keyboard) (Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”).

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*.

# Chapter 15

## OB and GYN Chapter

---

This chapter contains information useful for basic obstetrical, gynecological, and pelvic floor imaging.

Important:

Please see *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

See Chapter 18, “3D Imaging” for using 3D.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before system use.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient – Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window. Typing in the LMP (last menstrual period) for the exam type **OB** will calculate the expected date of confinement.

PATIENT	PATIENT DETAILS		PAUSED EXAMS	
TRANSDUCER	PATIENT ID: 20191216134853		LAST NAME:	FIRST NAME:
PRESET	DOB: MM/DD/YYYY	AGE:	GENDER:	MI:
REPORT	EXAM TYPE: Gyn		COMMENT:	
REVIEW	ACCESSION NUMBER:	REFERRING PHYSICIAN:	PREV EXAM DATE: MM/DD/YYYY	
END EXAM	LMP: MM/DD/YYYY	LENGTH OF CYCLE: DAYS	MENOPAUSE: YEARS	
PAUSE EXAM	GRAVIDA:	PARA:	ABORTA:	
	ADMITTING DIAGNOSIS:			
	<input type="checkbox"/> Store images of patient details		CLEAR	NEXT
			CLOSE	START EXAM

Figure 15-1. Exam Setup window with LMP

- If it is already known that there is more than one fetus, select the number of fetuses.

PATIENT	PATIENT DETAILS		PAUSED EXAMS	
TRANSDUCER	PATIENT ID: 20191216135100		LAST NAME:	FIRST NAME:
PRESET	DOB: MM/DD/YYYY	AGE:	GENDER:	MI:
REPORT	EXAM TYPE: OB		COMMENT:	
REVIEW	ACCESSION NUMBER:	REFERRING PHYSICIAN:	PREV EXAM DATE: MM/DD/YYYY	
END EXAM	LMP: MM/DD/YYYY	EDC: MM/DD/YYYY	GA:	
PAUSE EXAM	GRAVIDA:	PARA:	ABORTA:	
	ADMITTING DIAGNOSIS:	FETUSES: 2		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Store images of patient details	1 2 3 4	CLOSE	START EXAM

Figure 15-2. Exam Setup window with number of fetuses

- Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

## Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, click **Preset** and select the appropriate **Exam Type** and **Preset**. These will vary with each transducer.

PATIENT	PRESET	
TRANSDUCER	Exam Type	Preset
PRESET	GYN	FOLLICLE
REVIEW	OB	GYN-GEN
REPORT	PELVIC FLOOR	GYN-PEN
END EXAM	PROSTATE	GYN-RES
PAUSE EXAM	PREVIOUS	SAVE PRESET
		CLOSE

Figure 15-3. Preset window for GYN or OB Transducer



## Gestational Age and Expected Date of Confinement

You can calculate the gestational age (GA) and expected date of confinement (EDC) from measurements on the ultrasound image, or from clinical parameters such as date of last menstrual period. You can also use the results of an earlier examination.

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

### Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

#### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.

#### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

#### To remove a split:

Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.

### Color Mode (CFM)

#### To use Color mode:

- 1 Press **Color Mode** key on keyboard, or click **Color** tab on monitor.  
Color box is active (green color) and can be moved with trackball.
- 2 To resize the color box and keep the default shape, use the **+/-** key.

- 3 To decrease the color box width, click to deactivate the size cursor, then click on a corner of the box and drag the corner.
- 4 Click when you are finished changing the color box.

#### Scale:

- Change PRF with the **Scale** keyboard key or **Scale** screen button.

## Doppler Mode

#### To use Doppler mode:

- 1 Press **Doppler Mode** key on keyboard, or click **PW** tab on monitor. Doppler sample gate is active (green). Move with trackball.
- 2 Adjust size of Doppler gate with the +/- key
- 3 Adjust gain by turning **Doppler Mode** key.
- 4 Press the **Doppler Angle** key to activate the Doppler angle control, then adjust the angle with the +/- key or trackball.
- 5 To adjust volume, PRF, baseline, sweep speed, use keys on keyboard or click **Advanced** on the **Doppler** tab to use screen controls.

#### Auto Control of Baseline and Scale

Click **Auto** to have the system adjust baseline and scale (PRF) automatically. The adjustment requires a few vascular cycles before the adjustment is complete.

## Biopsy

**NOTE:** Before you perform any puncture procedure, including brachytherapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.

#### To display a puncture line on the image for biopsy guidance:

Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard:  or click **Biopsy** on the **Image** tab.

Remember to check that you are using the correct needle guide. The number of the needle guide is displayed on the monitor. Make sure the number corresponds to the guide you are using.

For better needle visualization see “Needle Enhancement” on page 78.

**NOTE:** If the image depth is set very low (to see tissue close to the transducer with high magnification), the needle tip echo can be outside the displayed image area. To see the needle tip in this case, zoom out so the full needle path is visible or pan the image to the side (to keep the high magnification).

## Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

Labels, bodymarks, and arrows are activated from the **Labels** and **Bodymarks** tabs to the left of the workspace.

## Labels



Figure 15-4. Label selector

### To select a label:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click on the arrow in the right of the label selector to see all labels.
- 4 Select the label by clicking it.
- 5 Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

*You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place*

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are on the same background..

### Type and edit your own labels on screen:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.
- 2 Click to accept the label text and position.

### To move or edit a label:

- 1 To move a label that is on the image, click the label to select it, and use the trackball to move it.
- 2 To edit a label on the image, click the label. (Label turns green).  
You can only edit your own labels.
- 3 Use backspace to move through the label and edit it.

### To remove a label:

- Long click the label you want to remove (point at it and press the **Select** key for more than 1 second).

### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click on **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

## Bodymarks

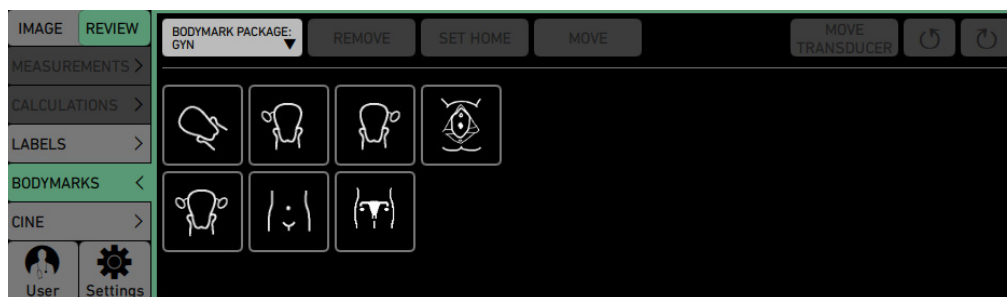


Figure 15-5. Bodymark selector

### To place a bodymark on the image:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click to select the bodymark you want. (If you do not see the one you want, click the arrows to see more pages with bodymarks. This only works if there are more) The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.
- 4 Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.
- 5 Use the trackball to select and move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

### To move a bodymark:

- 1 Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2 Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

### To replace a bodymark:

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

### To delete a bodymark from the monitor:

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

## Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator

### To adjust the imaging plane indicator:

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1 Drag the imaging plane indicator with the trackball.
- 2 Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3 Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

## Arrows

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

### To place an arrow on the image:

- 1 Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2 Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.
- 3 Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.
- 4 You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

## Measurements and Calculations

Measurements are generic measurements that you can do on any region of interest. Calculations are predefined measurements intended for measuring organs or ROIs within a particular preset.

For detailed instructions about using the 3D measuring tools, see Chapter 18, “3D Imaging” on page 203.

For detailed instructions about using the 2D measuring tools, see “Making Measurements” on page 47.

### Nuchal Translucency

Nuchal translucency measurements require special training. See the caution in the measurements section of the Safety chapter in the *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide*.

## Calculation Methods - GYN

### Follicle Diameter Measurements

By default, you can calculate the average diameter of a follicle using two diameters.

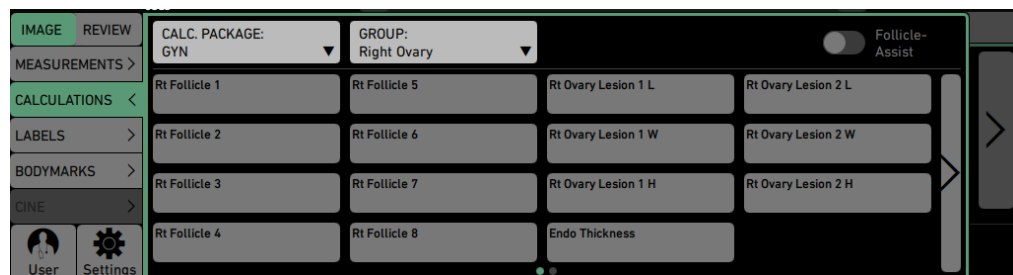


Figure 15-6. Ovary calculations.

#### To make a follicle calculation:

- 1 Click **Calculations**.
- 2 In the **GYN** calculation package, select **Right** (or **Left**) **Ovary** on the **Group** dropdown menu.
- 3 Click **Rt Follicle 1** (2,3,..)  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 4 Drag the caliper to the widest distance of the follicle and click. Another caliper appears.
- 5 Drag the second caliper to the narrowest distance of the follicle and click.

The system calculates the average diameter and displays it in the measurement data on the monitor.

*When you make a manual follicle calculation, the average diameter is displayed after Dist a and b.*

## Follicle-Assist

The Follicle-Assist calculation automatically sets two diameter measurements and calculates the average diameter of the follicle. You can adjust the calipers of these distance measurements as needed.



Figure 15-7. Follicle-Assist calculations.

### To make a Follicle-Assist calculation:

- 1 Click **Calculations**.
- 2 In the **GYN** calculation package, select **Right** (or **Left**) **Ovary** on the **Group** dropdown menu.
- 3 Click **Follicle-Assist** and select a measurement.
- 4 Place the cursor in the center of a follicle and click.

The system measures the widest diameter, then measures the diameter in a 90 degree angle to the first, and calculates the average diameter.

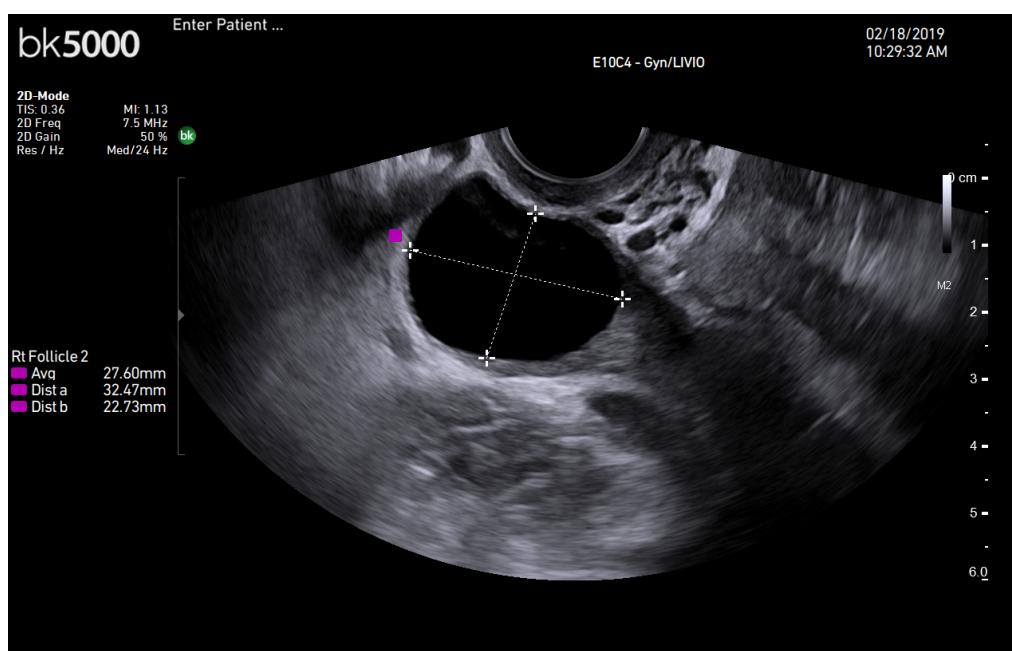


Figure 15-8. Follicle-Assist calculation. When you use the Follicle-Assist option, the average diameter is displayed before Dist a and b.

## Calculation Methods - OB

### General Information

This Exam Type contains measuring tools that can be used to calculate gestational age (GA), fetal weight (FW), and expected date of confinement (EDC). The calculations are based on measurements of the ultrasound image such as biparietal diameter (BPD) or abdominal circumference (AC).

Unless otherwise noted, in this chapter GA is expressed in days, FW in grams (g) and distances are in millimeters (mm).

### Obstetrics Reports

Obstetrics reports contains the results of clinical calculations of GA and EDC, as well as calculations based on measurements of the ultrasound image. For more information about editing, printing and saving reports, see “Using Reports” on page 178.

### Curves in Reports

The report will include reference curves for the current calculations. The ultrasound measured and calculated GA is displayed as an ‘x’ placed within the three curves according to its relation to the clinical calculation. In the report below, there is only a discrepancy of 1 day between the clinical and the ultrasound calculation, so the ‘x’ is placed on the center curve. With a higher discrepancy between the calculations, the ‘x’ will be placed further away from the center curve.



NEW HOSPITAL

**Patient Details**

Name: Patient ID: Study Date:  
 DOE, JANE 20190306144612 03/06/2019

DOB:  
 03/22/1989

Age:  
 29 years

**Exam Details**

# Fetuses: LMP:  
 1 11/10/2018

**OB Summary**

Clinical Age	16w4d	EDC	08/17/2019	LMP	11/10/2018
US Age	16w5d	US EDC	08/16/2019		

**OB Measurements**

Label	Value	GA	+/-	Growth
BPD:	3.48 cm	16w5d	+/- 1w1d	
		Hadlock		Hadlock

**OB Graphs**

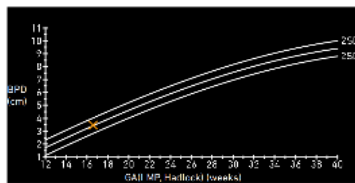


Figure 15-9. OB report with curve showing the calculated GA.

### Measuring Several Fetuses

If there is more than one fetus, and this has not been entered in the **Patient Details**, you can select the number of fetuses on the **Fetuses** dropdown menu. When measuring, select which fetus you are measuring (A, B...) on the **Fetus** dropdown menu.

**NOTE:** When you have selected e.g. Fetus A, make certain that you are measuring on the correct fetus.



Figure 15-10. Measuring several fetuses.

## Using Reports

### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the **Images** tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

### Printing a report:

- Click **Print** to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

### Saving a report as images:

- 1 Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.
  - 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.
- or

Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

### Capturing Images

#### Capturing Frozen Images

##### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.  
Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

#### Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

##### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

## Copying and Archiving

### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

## Printing Images

### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.

#### To open a thumbnail image and then print it:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press the **Print** key.

## Customization Example

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

#### To save a preset:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either **Review** or **Report**.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on **Save Preset**.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

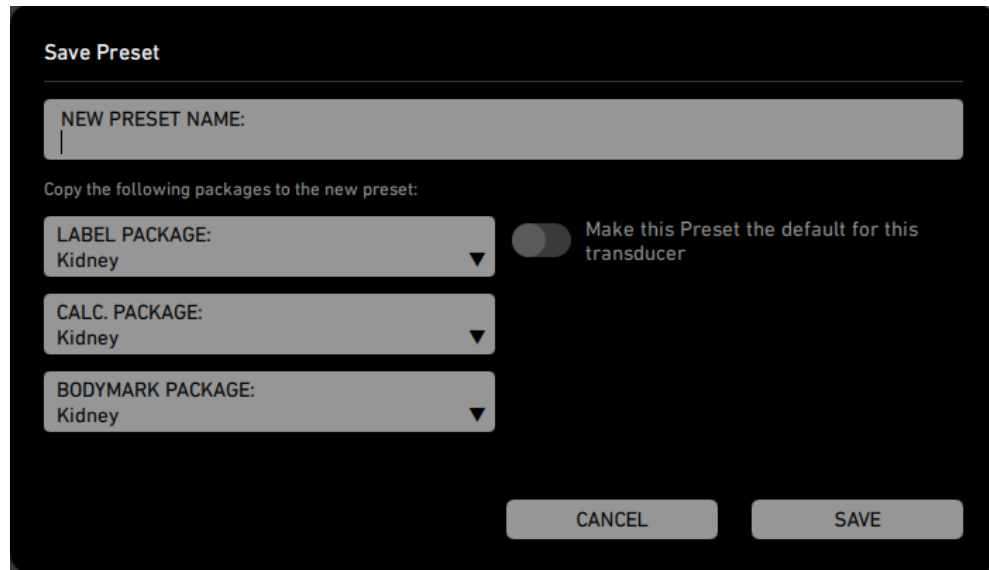


Figure 15-11. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Links to Additional Information

For more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”).
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”).
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”).
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”).
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”).
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”).
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”).
- Setting up and Customizing the System (including creating custom keys on the keyboard) (Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”).

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*.





# Chapter 16

## Surgery Chapter

---

**This chapter is valid for bk5000 only.**

This chapter contains information useful for basic surgery imaging, including colorectal, HPB, laparoscopic, and robotic imaging.

Important:

Read *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before system use.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient - Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- Annotations - Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window.
- 3** Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

## Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, click **Preset** and select the appropriate **Exam Type** and **Preset**. These will vary with each transducer.

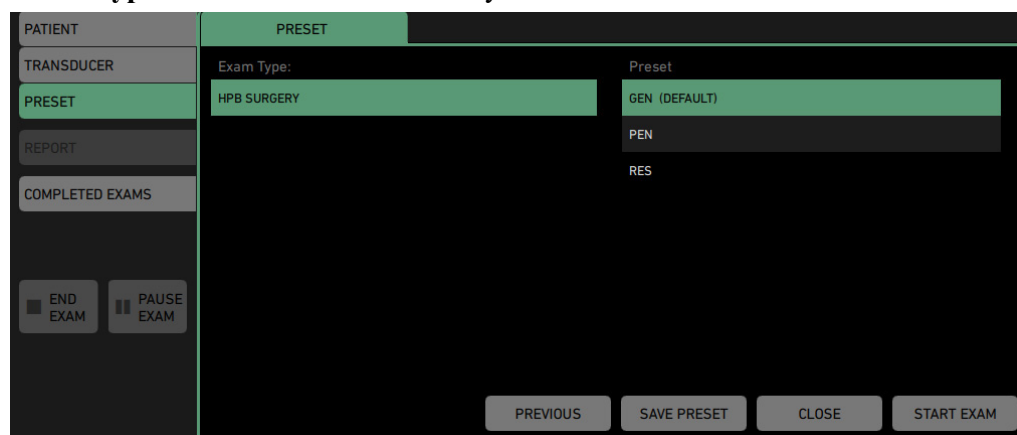


Figure 16-1. Presets window for surgical transducer

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

### Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

#### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.



#### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

#### To remove a split:

Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.

## Biopsy

**NOTE:** Before you perform any puncture procedure, including brachytherapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.

#### To display a puncture line on the image for biopsy guidance:

Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard:  or click **Biopsy** on the **Image** tab.

Remember to check that you are using the correct needle guide. The number of the needle guide is displayed on the monitor. Make sure the number corresponds to the guide you are using.

For better needle visualization see “Needle Enhancement” on page 78.

**NOTE:** If the image depth is set very low (to see tissue close to the transducer with high magnification), the needle tip echo can be outside the displayed image area. To see the needle tip in this case, zoom out so the full needle path is visible or pan the image to the side (to keep the high magnification).

## Color Mode (CFM)

#### To use Color mode:

- 1 Press **Color Mode** key on keyboard, or click **Color** tab on monitor.  
Color box is active (green color) and can be moved with trackball.
- 2 To resize the color box and keep the default shape, use the **+/-** key.
- 3 To decrease the color box width, click to deactivate the size cursor, then click on a corner of the box and drag the corner.
- 4 Click when you are finished changing the color box.

#### Scale:

- Change PRF with the **Scale** keyboard key or **Scale** screen button.

## Doppler Mode

#### To use Doppler mode:

- 1 Press **Doppler Mode** key on keyboard, or click **PW** tab on monitor.  
Doppler sample gate is active (green). Move with trackball.
- 2 Adjust size of Doppler gate with the **+/-** key
- 3 Adjust gain by turning **Doppler Mode** key.
- 4 Press the **Doppler Angle** key to activate the Doppler angle control, then adjust the angle with the **+/-** key or trackball.

- 5 To adjust volume, PRF, baseline, sweep speed, use keys on keyboard or click **Advanced** on the **Doppler** tab to use screen controls.

### Auto Control of Baseline and Scale

Click **Auto** to have the system adjust baseline and scale (PRF) automatically. The adjustment requires a few vascular cycles before the adjustment is complete.

## Elastography

See the section on Elastography in Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes” on page 81.

## Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows

Labels, bodymarks, and arrows are activated from the **Labels** and **Bodymarks** tabs to the left of the workspace.

### Labels

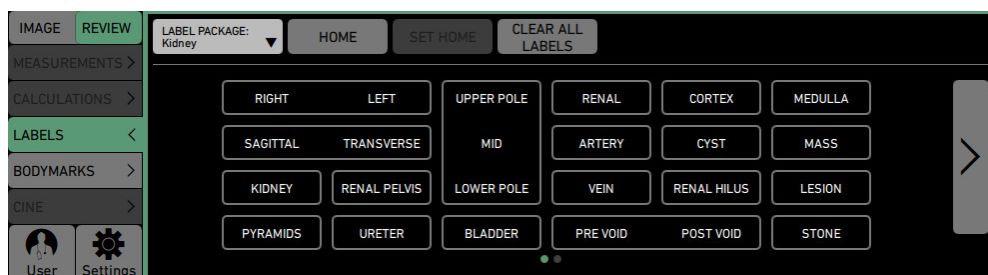


Figure 16-2. Label selector

#### To select a label:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Labels**. The Labels selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant label package. The displayed labels will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click on the arrow in the right of the label selector to see all labels.
- 4 Select the label by clicking it.
- 5 Use the trackball to move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

*You can select where labels show up on the screen per default. Click **Set Home** when you have placed your label. The next label you click will show up in the same place*

Opposed labels are linked. This means that if you have selected **Right** and afterwards click **Left**, the label name will change to left. Linked labels are on the same background..

#### Type and edit your own labels on screen:

- 1 Type the text you want for the label.  
You can move the label while you are typing it.

- 2 Click to accept the label text and position.

#### To move or edit a label:

- 1 To move a label that is on the image, click the label to select it, and use the trackball to move it.
- 2 To edit a label on the image, click the label. (Label turns green).  
You can only edit your own labels.
- 3 Use backspace to move through the label and edit it.

#### To remove a label:

- Long click the label you want to remove (point at it and press the **Select** key for more than 1 second).

#### To remove all labels from an image:

- Click on **Clear All Labels** in the workspace.

## Bodymarks

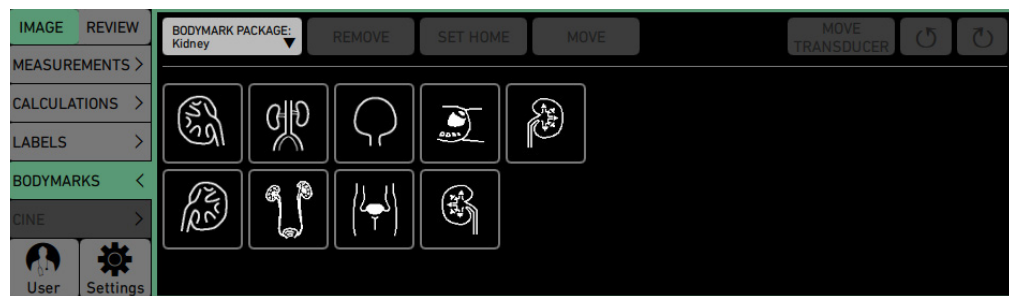


Figure 16-3. Bodymark selector

#### To place a bodymark on the image:

- 1 In the workspace, click **Bodymarks**. The Bodymarks selector window opens.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select the relevant bodymark package. The displayed bodymarks will reflect the selected package.
- 3 Click to select the bodymark you want. (If you do not see the one you want, click the arrows to see more pages with bodymarks. This only works if there are more) The bodymark appears on the monitor with a highlighted imaging plane indicator.
- 4 Drag the imaging plane indicator to position it; and use the + and - keys to rotate it. Click when the imaging plane indicator is in the correct position.
- 5 Use the trackball to select and move the label and then click when it is in the correct position.

#### To move a bodymark:

- 1 Click the **Move** button. A green frame appears around the bodymark.
- 2 Drag it to the position you want, and click again.

### To replace a bodymark:

To replace an existing bodymark with a different one, click the new bodymark. The new bodymark will appear in the default position.

### To delete a bodymark from the monitor:

- Click the **Delete** button.



Unless you delete it or replace it with a new one, a bodymark will remain on the monitor until you change Preset or begin to image a new patient.

## Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator

### To adjust the imaging plane indicator:

When you place a bodymark on the image, the imaging plane indicator is green and can be adjusted as follows:

- 1 Drag the imaging plane indicator with the trackball.
- 2 Rotate left or right by using the + and - keys.
- 3 Click again when the imaging plane indicator is the way you want it.

The imaging plane indicator turns orange and can be adjusted by pressing  or  buttons.

## Arrows

You can place arrows on the image to mark area of special concern or interest.

### To place an arrow on the image:

- 1 Click the **Labels** tab.
- 2 Click the **Arrows** button and select the arrow you want. The arrow appears highlighted on the monitor.
- 3 Drag the arrow to the position you want, and click again.
- 4 You can add another arrow by selecting it.

To delete an arrow, click **Delete**. To delete all arrows from the image, click **Clear All**.

## Measurements and Calculations

### Distance

#### To measure a distance:

- 1 Press the Measure key on the keyboard  
or  
Click on the **Measurements** tab, click distance.  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 2 Drag the caliper to the position you want and click.  
Another caliper appears.

- 3 Drag the second caliper to the position you want and click.  
Measurement is displayed on the monitor to the left of the image.
- 4 For multiple measurements, repeat the steps.

## Freehand Measurements – Area and Circumference

### To measure the area and circumference:

- 1 Press the Measure key on the key board  
or  
Click on the Measurements tab, click **2D Trace**:  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 2 Drag the caliper to where you want to start drawing. Click.  
A drawing cursor appears where you clicked.
- 3 Drag it to draw the shape you want.  
To delete backward from the cursor, press - on the +/- key. The cursor is automatically moved back. To undo the deletion, press +.
- 4 When you have finished drawing, click the drawing cursor.  
The shape is automatically closed by a straight line from the drawing caliper to the first caliper (starting point).  
Area and circumference are automatically calculated and displayed to the left of the image.

## Volume

When you calculate volume using this method, the height, width, and length measurements must all be made at right angles to each other. Therefore, you must use 2 images to measure volume.

### To calculate a volume:

- 1 Press the Measure key on the key board  
or  
Click on the Measurements tab, click **Volume**:  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 2 Position the first caliper and click. Another caliper appears.
- 3 Position the second caliper and click. Another caliper appears.
- 4 Position the third caliper and click.
- 5 When you have finished measuring, the volume calculation appears automatically to the left of the image.

## Using Reports

### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the **Images** tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

### Printing a report:

- Click **Print** to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

### Saving a report as images:

- 1 Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.
  - 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.
- or

Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

### Capturing Images

#### Capturing Frozen Images

##### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.  
Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

#### Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

##### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

## Copying and Archiving

### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

## Printing Images

### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.

#### To open a thumbnail image and then print it:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press the **Print** key.

## Customization Example

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

#### To save a preset:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either **Review** or **Report**.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on **Save Preset**.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

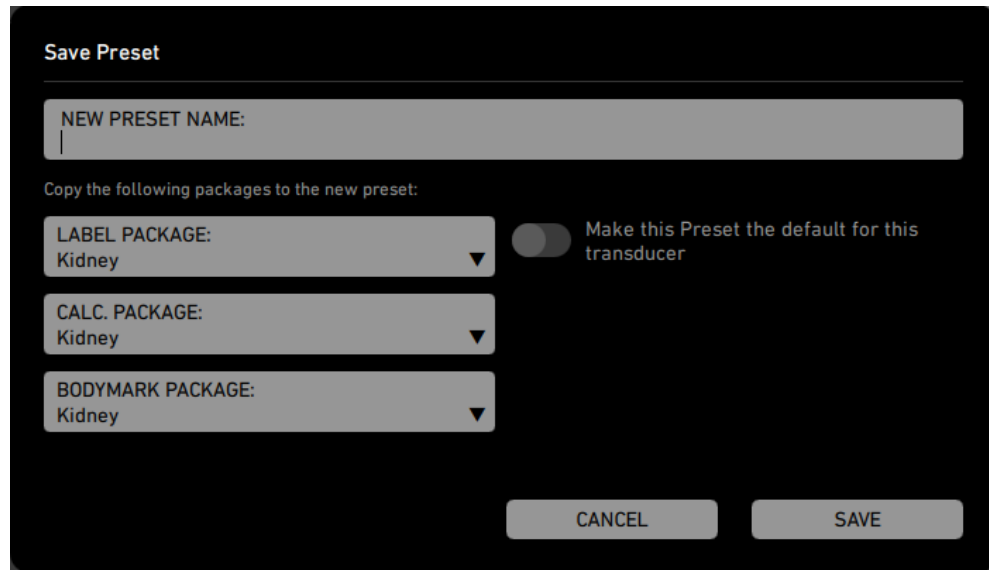


Figure 16-4. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Links to Additional Information

Before reading about the Pro Packages, you should already be familiar with the system, but for more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”)
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”)
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”)
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”)
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”)
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”)
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”)

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*



# Chapter 17

## Neurosurgery Chapter

---

**This chapter is valid for bk5000 only.**

This Exam Type contains information useful for basic brain imaging including:

- Burr-hole imaging (N11C5s transducer)
- Craniotomy imaging (N13C5 transducer)
- Spinal Cord imaging (X18L5s transducer<sup>1</sup>) - see “Spinal Cord Exam Type” on page 200.
- Imaging with Brainlab Cranial Navigation systems.

Important:

Please see *Getting Started with bk3000 & bk5000* for basic controls.

Read transducer user guides for more information before doing biopsies.

Read *Care and Cleaning* for sterilization instructions.

Read *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide* before system use.

### Contents

- Setting up the Patient – Patient ID
- Presets
- Imaging Controls
- Annotations – Labels, Bodymarks, and Arrows
- Measurements and Calculations
- Using Reports
- Capturing and Documenting Images
- Customization Examples
- Links to Additional Information

### Setting up the Patient – Patient ID

**You must have a patient ID in order to save images.**

- 1** Press **Patient** on keyboard or click **Enter Patient** on the monitor.
- 2** Enter data in the **Patient Details** window.
- 3** Click **Next** (below the **Patient Details** window).

### Presets

Once you have selected your transducer, click the **Neuro Exam Type** and select the appropriate preset. This will vary with each transducer.

1. USA only.

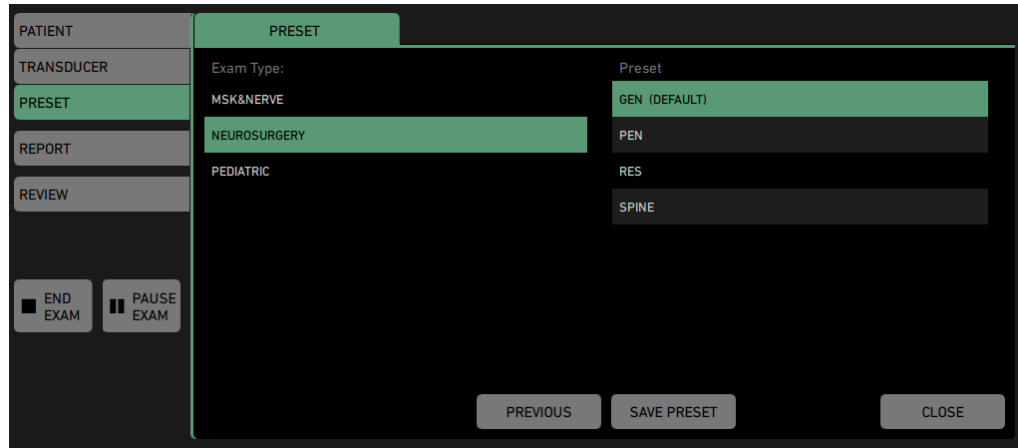


Figure 17-1. Preset window for Neuro transducer

## Imaging Controls

### 2D (B-mode)

Imaging starts in 2D.

To return to imaging with 2D alone after you have been using it in combination with other modes, press the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard or double-click on the 2D tab.

#### Overall Gain:

- Adjust gain by *turning* the **B-Mode** key on the keyboard (when the image is not frozen).

#### Different gain at different image depths: adjusting the TGC curve:

- Move the **TGC** sliders to the right or left to adjust the TGC curve (differential gain).

The shape of the TGC curve is temporarily displayed to the right of the image as a curved vertical line.

### Split Screen

Linked Dual is enabled as a default setting for all Exam Types. During split screen imaging, the Linked Dual function automatically transfers screen-A image parameters to screen-b (and vice versa). Color and power mode can be in only one screen.

#### To use split screen:

- 1 Click **Dual**. Or press the **Split**  key.
- 2 Click **Dual Layout** and select **Side By Side** or **Top/Bottom**.

#### To select one of the views:

- Click in the view you want to select (or press the **Split** key).

#### To remove a split:

Click **Dual**. Or long press the **Split** key.

## Biopsy

**NOTE:** Before you perform any puncture procedure, including brachytherapy, make sure you have read the warnings in the Puncture and Brachytherapy section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.

### To display a puncture line on the image for biopsy guidance:

Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard:  or click **Biopsy** on the **Image** tab.

Remember to check that you are using the correct needle guide. The number of the needle guide is displayed on the monitor. Make sure the number corresponds to the guide you are using.

For better needle visualization see “Needle Enhancement” on page 78.

**NOTE:** If the image depth is set very low (to see tissue close to the transducer with high magnification), the needle tip echo can be outside the displayed image area. To see the needle tip in this case, zoom out so the full needle path is visible or pan the image to the side (to keep the high magnification).

## Color Mode (CFM)

### To use Color mode:

- 1 Press **Color Mode** key on keyboard, or click **Color** tab on monitor.  
Color box is active (green color) and can be moved with trackball.
- 2 To resize the color box and keep the default shape, use the **+ /-** key.
- 3 To decrease the color box width, click to deactivate the size cursor, then click on a corner of the box and drag the corner.
- 4 Click when you are finished changing the color box.

### Scale:

- Change PRF with the **Scale** keyboard key or **Scale** screen button.

## Doppler Mode

### To use Doppler mode:

- 1 Press **Doppler Mode** key on keyboard, or click **PW** tab on monitor.  
Doppler sample gate is active (green). Move with trackball.
- 2 Adjust size of Doppler gate with the **+/-** key
- 3 Adjust gain by turning **Doppler Mode** key.
- 4 Press the **Doppler Angle** key to activate the Doppler angle control, then adjust the angle with the **+/-** key or trackball.
- 5 To adjust volume, PRF, baseline, sweep speed, use keys on keyboard or click **Advanced** on the **Doppler** tab to use screen controls.

## Auto Control of Baseline and Scale

Click **Auto** to have the system adjust baseline and scale (PRF) automatically. The adjustment requires a few vascular cycles before the adjustment is complete.

## Elastography

See the section on Elastography in Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes” on page 81.

## Measurements and Calculations

### Distance

#### To measure a distance:

- 1** Press the Measure key on the keyboard  
or  
Click on the **Measurements** tab, click distance.  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 2** Drag the caliper to the position you want and click.  
Another caliper appears.
- 3** Drag the second caliper to the position you want and click.  
Measurement is displayed on the monitor to the left of the image.
- 4** For multiple measurements, repeat the steps.

### Freehand Measurements – Area and Circumference

#### To measure the area and circumference:

- 1** Press the Measure key on the key board  
or  
Click on the Measurements tab, click **2D Trace**:  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 2** Drag the caliper to where you want to start drawing. Click.  
A drawing cursor appears where you clicked.
- 3** Drag it to draw the shape you want.  
To delete backward from the cursor, press - on the +/- key. The cursor is automatically moved back. To undo the deletion, press +.
- 4** When you have finished drawing, click the drawing cursor.  
The shape is automatically closed by a straight line from the drawing caliper to the first caliper (starting point).  
Area and circumference are automatically calculated and displayed to the left of the image.

## Volume

When you calculate volume using this method, the height, width, and length measurements must all be made at right angles to each other. Therefore, you must use 2 images to measure volume.

### To calculate a volume:

- 1 Press the Measure key on the key board  
or  
Click on the Measurements tab, click **Volume**:  
A caliper appears on the image.
- 2 Position the first caliper and click. Another caliper appears.
- 3 Position the second caliper and click. Another caliper appears.
- 4 Position the third caliper and click.
- 5 When you have finished measuring, the volume calculation appears automatically to the left of the image.

## Using Reports

### Making a report:

When you have finished making measurements and selecting assessments, add any images you want in the report:

- 1 On the **Review** tab, click **Report**.
- 2 Click the Images tab.
- 3 Select the images you want to include in the report by clicking on them.
- 4 Comments put in **Patient** and **Comments** appear in the report.

### Printing a report:

- Click Print to print the report on the report printer (See “Printers Tab” on page 278) before saving it.

### Saving a report as images:

- 1 Click **Store Report Image**. The report is stored as DICOM images, and you can see and print them by clicking **Review**.

## Capturing and Documenting Images

### Cine Review

#### To use cine review:

- 1 Freeze image.
- 2 Turn **B-Mode** key to scroll back through imaging.  
or  
Click the **Cine tab on the** left side of the workspace and use the controls shown.

## Capturing Images

### Capturing Frozen Images

#### Saving (capturing) images to system hard disk:

- 1 Freeze the image.
- 2 Press the **Capture** key.  
Thumbnail of saved image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

### Capturing Clips (Unfrozen Images)

#### To capture clips:

- 1 Press **Capture** to start recording.
- 2 Press **Capture** again to stop recording.  
Thumbnail of image appears at bottom of monitor above workspace.

## Copying and Archiving

### Copying or Archiving Images and Clips

#### To copy or archive images and clips:

- 1 In the **Review** window, select thumbnail images. Use the buttons **Multiselect** and **Select All** if required.
- 2 Click **Export** and select where to export the images.

## Printing Images

### Printing Images Displayed on the Monitor

- Press the **Print** key on the keyboard.

### Printing from Thumbnail Images

You must open the images in order to print them.

#### To open a thumbnail image and then print it:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab.
- 2 Select the image you want to print.
- 3 Press the **Print** key.

## Customization Example

### Saving a New Preset

When you have changed the setup, you can save it as a new preset.

### To save a preset:

- 1 Click the **Review** tab and then click either Review or Report.
- 2 Click on the **Preset** tab and click on Save Preset.  
The **Save Preset** window appears.

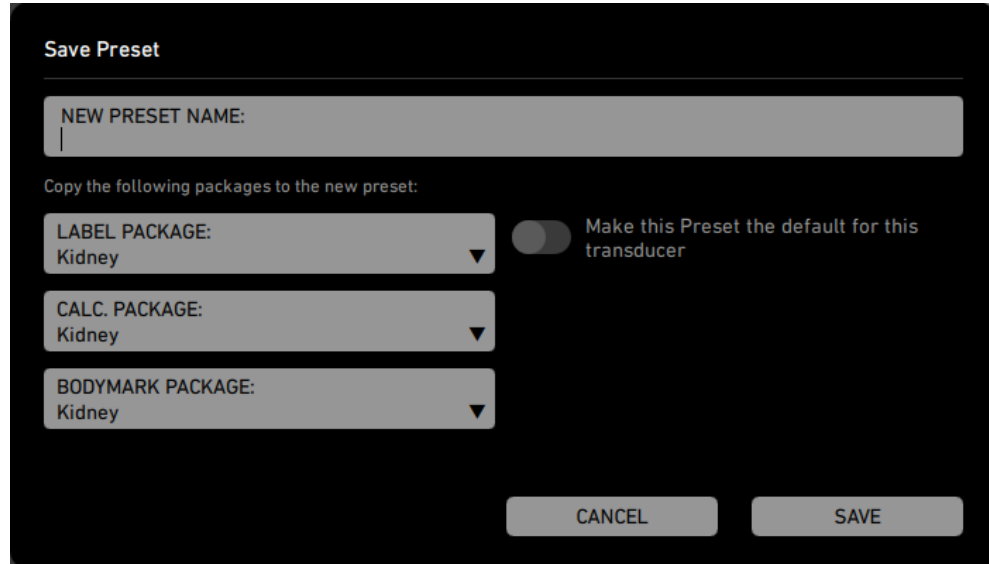


Figure 17-2. The Save Preset window.

- 3 Enter a name for the preset and select the options you want from the drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Default Exam Types and Presets

You can change the default Exam Type and preset for a transducer. When creating a new preset as in “Saving a New Preset” above, click the toggle button **Make this Preset the default for this transducer**.

## Imaging with Brainlab

Brainlab combined with intraoperative ultrasound is an enhanced navigation system for brain surgery.

Three Brainlab navigation systems can be used with the bk5000: Curve, Kick, and Buzz.

## Contact with the Company

Contact your Brainlab representative, who can help you with the setup.

## Installation and Setup

**For installation and connection, see the Setup Guide IG36483 on [web.bkmed.dk](http://web.bkmed.dk).**

During surgery, the transducer is in a special support bracket (the transducer adapter).



Figure 17-3. The Brainlab NI1C5s/NI3C5 transducer adapter.

### Test the Established Connections

Make sure that the connection works, by confirming that the Brainlab system can see the input from the bk5000.

## Spinal Cord Exam Type<sup>1</sup>

This Exam Type is used with the X18L5s transducer. License dependent.

### Links to Additional Information

Before reading about the Exam Types, you should already be familiar with the system, but for more information about different topics, you may want to refer to the following chapters:

- Layout of controls on the monitor and how to use the workflow tabs (Chapter 2, “The User Interface”)
- Names of screen controls and what they do (Chapter 3, “Controls on the Monitor”)
- Working with images (Chapter 4, “Working with the Image”)
- Making measurements (Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”)
- Documenting the image and results (Chapter 6, “Documentation”)
- Using different imaging modes (Chapter 7, “Imaging Modes”)
- List of all measurement abbreviations with full name (Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”)
- Setting up and Customizing the System (including creating custom keys on the keyboard) (Appendix C, “Setting Up and Customizing Your System”)

The tables and formulas that the system uses for calculations are in the *Technical Data (BZ2100)*.

1. USA only.







# Chapter 18

## 3D Imaging

---

### Introduction to 3D Ultrasound

The basic concept of 3D ultrasound is to collect a data set of 2D ultrasound images (black & white or color) while tracking and storing the location of each individual 2D image. The data set is then reconstructed into a single 3D volume that can be displayed on the monitor and manipulated. The reconstructed 3D volume can be rotated, sliced, rendered, or displayed in multiplane cross-sections.

*Before you perform any 3D imaging, make sure you have read the warnings in the 3D section of the Safety chapter in the bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide.*

### Imaging Modes

On bk3000 and bk5000, you can use 3D with 2D, Color mode, or Power mode imaging. However, you cannot use 3D with the following modes and functions:

- Doppler mode (spectral PW Doppler)
- 2D Tint

**NOTE:** *Turning on one of these modes or functions while you are using 3D will turn off 3D. If you are already using one of these modes, turning on 3D will turn the mode or function off, and turning off 3D will not turn it on again.*

**NOTE:** *Acquiring a 3D volume with some color maps may result in faulty colors for some pixels. To avoid this, the system selects a default pure grayscale instead.*

Making measurements on a 3D cube is not the same as making measurements on a 2D image, as described in Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”.

### 3D License

The 3D function of the bk3000 and bk5000 can be purchased as an option. For more information, see the bk3000 and bk5000 Product Data sheets that accompany this user guide.

To run the 3D software, you must have a license from BK Medical. For information about activating the 3D option, see “License Tab” on page 286.

### Controlling Transducer Movement

The 2D images in the data set are imaged with the transducer in different positions. The transducer can be moved in the following way:

- With 360° degree built-in 3D imaging.
- Untracked freehand (see warnings in the *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide*).

## 360° built-in 3D-imaging

Transducers 20R3 (9052) and X14L4 (9038) have built-in movers for 3D acquisition. For information about setting up and attaching these transducers, see their respective User Guides.

## Untracked Freehand Acquisition

Untracked linear and fan acquisitions (freely moving the transducer while you acquire a 3D data set) are allowed with any transducer. However, certain combinations of motion and transducer will not produce a sensible 3D volume.

### Imaging Direction

You must select the imaging direction corresponding to the direction in which you plan to move the transducer.

- Select imaging direction with **3D Direction** button in the **3D** tab.

The direction you choose gives the system information about how to reconstruct the 3D volume. If there is a mismatch, the resulting volume can be mirrored.

After you acquire the image, you must check the reconstructed volume to make sure that it is a correct representation of the data.

### Measurements Not Accurate

If you start to make a measurement on a 3D data set acquired using the untracked freehand method, a warning appears in red on the monitor to remind you that the measurement will not be accurate.

## 3D Imaging Overview

The 3D imaging process has the following steps:

- Preparations – see page 204
- Adjust settings – see page 205
- Acquisition – see page 206
- Viewing – see page 207
- Working with the 3D image – see page 208

## Preparations

### Before you start the 3D image acquisition:

- 1 Check all the connections.
- 2 Choose the preset you want.
- 3 Optimize the 2D image.

**NOTE:** You cannot turn on 3D if the image is frozen.

**NOTE:** You cannot acquire 3D data sets unless you have entered a patient ID. If you have not entered a valid patient ID, you will be prompted to do so. The default patient ID is the current time and date.

## Adjusting the Image Capture Settings

### ROI (3D Region of Interest)

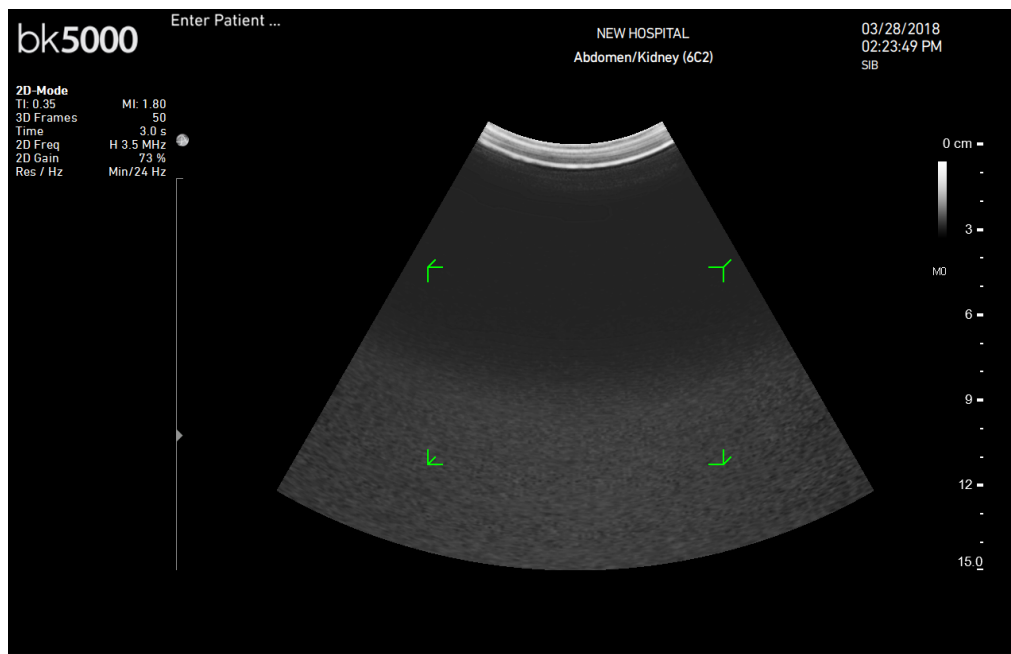


Figure 18-1. The 3D Region of Interest

When you turn 3D on, 3D ROI markers (see Fig 18-1) appear in the image area to indicate the area that will be captured in the 3D data set.

**NOTE:** You cannot press the **Zoom** key to activate the 3D ROI box. The **Zoom** key continues to work in the normal way for the 2D image.

To move the 3D ROI box to a different part of the image, click inside the box to select it and drag it with the trackball. Click to release the cursor when the box is where you want it.

To resize the box (increase or decrease the area covered by the 3D acquisition), press +/- when the box is selected.

You can also resize the box by clicking one of the corners (selecting it) and then dragging the corner.

## 3D Capture Settings

You can set various 3D capture settings using the 3D buttons in the **3D** tab.

- **3D Spacing** sets the spacing between frames in mm.
- **3D Distance** sets the distance the transducer will travel to acquire the 3D volume.
- **3D Direction** sets the direction to **L-R** (left to right) or **R-L** (right to left)
- **3D Sweep Mode** sets the freehand sweep mode to **Untracked Linear** or **Untracked Fan**.
- **Acquire Time** sets the duration of the recording.

**Note:** *These buttons function differently when used with built-in 3D movers. Spacing and distance are shown in degrees. Direction is shown in clockwise or counter-clockwise, and 3D Sweep Mode cannot be selected.*

### Imaging Direction

#### *Untracked freehand*

Before you acquire an untracked freehand data set, it is essential to select the appropriate imaging direction so that the 3D volume will be reconstructed correctly. Be especially careful if you have changed the orientation (right/left or left/right) of the 2D image (changed its orientation). In this case, the system will not make any automatic adjustments of orientation before 3D acquisition. The effect of a flipped 2D image on the resulting 3D volume can be confusing, so we recommend that you do *not* change the default orientation of the 2D image before acquiring a 3D data set.

You must select the imaging direction to match the direction that the transducer will move during acquisition.

**NOTE:** *If the patient is not lying on his or her back, be very careful when you choose the imaging direction because the directions are defined relative to a patient lying face-up.*

## Acquisition

### To start a 3D acquisition:

- 1** Select **Acquire Time**. Note that image quality is dependent on the time spent on the acquisition.
- 2** Press the **3D** key.

or

- Click **3D Acquire**.

A progress bar appears during acquisition along with a **Stop** button that allows you to stop the progressing acquisition.

**3D** review buttons appear when you have acquired the 3D volume.

After you have acquired a 3D data set, it is displayed as a volume on the monitor. You can select various ways of viewing the volume, and you can use various tools and settings to enhance the image.

## Viewing a 3D Data Set

When viewing a 3D data set, there are different buttons for enhancing the 3D view. These are described in detail later in this chapter.

## Enhancing a 3D View

When a 3D view is displayed, you can use different buttons on the **3D** tab to enhance the appearance of the 3D volume and make it easier to see the structures you are interested in:

- **3D Brightness**
- **3D Contrast**
- **3D Zoom**
- **3D Opacity**
- **3D Luminance**
- **3D Hue**
- **Photorealistic**

## Presets

After you have set **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and **Zoom**, and any other **3D** settings, you can save your settings as a **Preset**. Do as follows:

- 1 Press the **Patient** key.
- 2 Click the **Preset** tab.
- 3 Select **Save Preset**.
- 4 Type in a name for your preset.
- 5 Keep or change the **Label**, **Calculation**, and **Bodymark** packages.
- 6 Decide if the preset should be the default for this transducer.
- 7 Click **Save**.

## 3D Layout Options

When you view the acquired volume, you can change the layout of the monitor using the following options on the **3D** tab.

- **Orientation** – Turns the orientation marker on and off. The orientation marker is positioned on the first frame in the volume.
- **Wire Frame** – Shows or hides the wire frame on the volume.

## Working with the 3D Image


### Manipulating the Volume

You can use the trackball and the **Select** key to manipulate the volume in various ways. The form of the cursor is different, depending on what you are doing.

#### Rotating



##### To rotate a volume in any direction:

- 1 Point outside the volume.  
The cursor looks like this: 
- 2 Click and use the trackball to drag the cursor and rotate the volume.
- 3 Click to end rotating.


You can also rotate the intersecting planes view in the 4-Up and 6-Up views.

#### Moving a Plane In and Out of the Volume

You can move a selected plane in and out of the volume to “slice” the volume so that a plane inside the original volume is displayed as a face of the transformed volume. This new face is called a “cut plane”. The cut plane can be parallel to a one of the original faces of the volume or at an angle (tilted) relative to the axes of the volume.



##### To slice the volume:


- 1 Move the cursor onto one of the volume faces.  
The cursor looks like this: 
- 2 Click and use the trackball to drag the cursor to move the plane through the volume until the cut face you want is visible.
- 3 To restore parts of the volume that you have sliced away, drag the cut plane back through the volume.
- 4 Click to end slicing.

#### Tilting a Plane

You can tilt a plane to see views that are not parallel to one of the original faces of the volume. (This often creates additional planes.)



##### To tilt a plane:

- 1 Click the edge of a plane to select it.  
The cursor looks like this  , and the wire frame around the plane becomes red.
- 2 Click and use the trackball to drag the cursor to tilt the cut plane.  
You can then move the tilted cut plane in and out (slice) as described before.
- 3 Click to end tilting.



## Moving the Volume

### To move the volume:

- 1 Move the cursor so that it is inside the volume.
- 2 Hold down the **Shift** key and the **Select** key.  
The cursor looks like a hand.
- 3 Drag the volume to the position you want, while holding the **Shift** key and the **Select** key down.
- 4 Click when the volume is where you want it.

## Animating the Volume

### To make the volume rotate automatically:

- Click **3D Animate**.  
The volume rotates.

To stop the rotation, click **3D Animate** again.

You can select how to rotate the volume using the following buttons:

- **Animation Speed**
- **Animation Span** – the extent of the rotation
- **Rotation** – horizontal or vertical

## Aligning or Deleting a Face

You can turn the volume so that a particular plane is facing you. You can also delete a cut plane to create a tilted cut plane.

If you point at a plane of the volume and press the **+** side of the **+/-** key, a popup menu appears.

Click	Result
Align Face	The volume moves so that the plane is facing you.
Delete Face	The plane disappears.

## Annotating a 3D View

As with 2D images, you can annotate a 3D view with a label or arrow. You cannot use a bodymark.

You can add as many labels or arrows to a 3D view as you want. When you have finished, you can save the annotated image as a view that you name. You can save the image both as a 2D snapshot and as a 3D cube.

### To add a label to a 3D view:

- 1 Click **3D Label**.  
A writing cursor appears.
- 2 Move the cursor to where you want the label.

- 3 Type the label.
- 4 Click. (You can drag the label to reposition it before you click; however, after you click, you cannot edit the label, only delete it.)  
You can add additional labels.
- 5 When you have added all the labels you want, click **3D Label** again.

#### To add an arrow to a 3D view:

- 1 Click **Arrow**.  
The cursor appears on the 3D volume with an arrow.
- 2 Drag the arrow to where you want it.  
The orientation of the arrow changes with the direction in which you drag it.
- 3 Click to set the arrow.  
An arrow is placed on the image.
- 4 You can add another arrow.
- 5 When you have added all the arrows you want, click **Arrow** again.

**NOTE:** *After you have positioned an annotation on the image and clicked, you cannot edit the annotation or move it. You can only delete it. To delete an annotation, click **Undo Label**. The most recent annotation is deleted. You can click **Undo** several times to remove more than one annotation. You can also click **Clear Labels** to remove them all.*

## The 6 3D Views

There are 6 different ways you can view the 3D data set:

- Cube
- Render
- 4-up
- MIP
- 6-up
- Transp.

### Cube View

This is a texture-mapped representation of the volume. It is the default view.

## Making Measurements in a Cube View

In a Cube view, you can measure the height, length, width, and volume of a pathology if you have used a system-controlled positioning device to acquire the data set. You cannot make accurate measurements on data sets acquired using untracked freehand.

**NOTE:** *Making measurements on a 3D cube is not the same as making measurements on a 2D image, as described in Chapter 5, “Making Measurements”. After you have clicked to position a point to make a 3D measurement, you cannot move the point. You can only complete the measurement (if it requires more points) and then delete the measurement and make a new one.*

### To make a 3D distance measurement:

- 1 Click **Measure Dist.**
- 2 Click to position the points of the measurement.  
The measurement is displayed underneath the 3D volume.

## Measuring Volumes

### To make a **HWL** measurement:

- 3 Click **HWL**.
- 4 Make a measurement of the height of the pathology.  
The measurement is displayed underneath the 3D volume with the number of the measurement and **H** (e.g. 1-H).
- 5 Click **HWL** again and measure the width of the pathology.  
The measurement is displayed underneath the 3D volume with the number of the measurement and **W** (e.g. 1-W).
- 6 Click **HWL** again and measure the length of the pathology.  
The measurement is displayed underneath the 3D volume with the number of the measurement and **L** (e.g. 1-L), along with the volume of the pathology displayed with **HWL**.

### To make a **Planimetry** measurement

You can also measure a volume by drawing polygons around the area of interest on slices taken throughout the Cube.

- 1 Click **Volume**.
- 2 Draw a polygon around the area of interest by clicking points on the perimeter.  
When you have come to the last point, double-click to set the area.
- 3 Click **Next** to move through the volume by the chosen step size or **Prev** to go to the previous step.
- 4 Outline the area of interest in the new slice.
- 5 Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for each slice until the area of interest is no longer visible (the volume measurement is completed.)  
The system updates the accumulated volume (in square cm) as each polygon is completed.
- 6 Click **Volume** again to finish the volume measurement.

## Deleting measurements

### To delete all measurements:

- Click **Clear Measurements**.

**NOTE:** For information about accuracy of measurements on acquired and reconstructed places, see the *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide*.

## Render View

Rendering dramatically improves 3D visualization. It is useful for looking in detail at soft tissues such as fistulas and abscess cavities. In this view, for gray scale volumes only, you can use sculpting tools to remove obstructing portions of the volume so you can better see the areas of interest.

## Render Settings

You can change the way a Render view looks by using the buttons available after selecting **Render** in the **3D Display Mode** dropdown.:

- **Photorealistic** – Adjusts the photorealistic parameter used in the rendering. This can only be used on gray scale volumes.
- **3D Opacity** – Specifies the transparency (opacity) of a structure.

## Sculpting Tool

The Sculpting tool lets you remove unwanted data from a Render view. The Sculpting tool can only be used on gray scale volumes – when there is no color in the volume.


There are two sculpting tools:

- The cutting tool (which you can use to cut away the outside of the volume or to cut a hole inside the volume)
- The shaving tool


### To use the sculpting tools:

- 1 Click **3D Sculpture**.
- 2 Click **Sculpt. Method** to select **Inside**, **Outside** or **Shave**.
- 3 If you select **Inside**, you can adjust how deep you want to cut. Click **Sculpt Depth** and move the slider to adjust the percentage that is removed when you move the cutting tool.
- 4 Use the different tools as described below.
- 5 To turn off the sculpting tools, click **3D Sculpture**.


### To use the cutting tool (inside):

- 1 Click on one plane of the volume.
- 2 Press the **Select**, then drag the  to draw a closed curve on the volume plane.
- 3 Press the **Select** key again when you are finished.  
If you have selected 100% **Depth**, a hole appears extending through the volume.

### To use the cutting tool (outside):

- 1 Click on one plane of the volume.
- 2 Press the **Select**, then drag the  to draw a closed curve on the volume plane.
- 3 Press the **Select** key again when you are finished.  
The area outside the curve disappears.

### To use the shaving tool:

- 1 Click on one plane of the volume.
- 2 Press **Select**, then move the  cursor over the area to be shaved.  
The more you move the cursor over the surface, the more surface is removed.
- 3 Press the **Select** key again when you are finished.

## Displaying Sculpture Results

Click **Sculpt Display** to toggle between a view showing the result of sculpting and the unsculpted view.

## MIP View

Maximum Intensity Projection (MIP) emphasizes the pixels with the highest intensity in the volume. If the highest intensities are mapped to the highest blood flow velocities, this mode accentuates and reveals the peak velocity regions of a volume. It is useful for:

- Looking at maximum flow jets
- Visualizing skeletal structures beneath tissue
- Looking at vascularization

## 4-Up View

This view has three orthogonal plane views and a view showing the positions of these intersecting planes within the volume. The planes can be moved by adjusting them in the intersecting view.

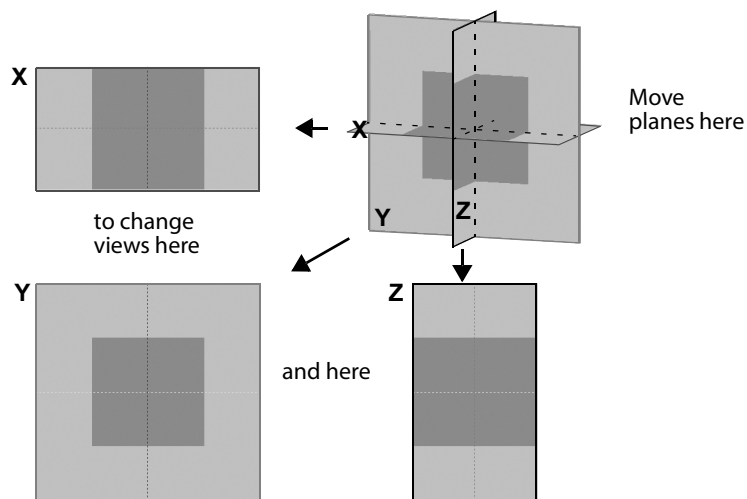


Figure 18-2. The 3D 4-Up View window.

Move the **XYZ** planes in the intersecting view to see the different planes **X**, **Y**, and **Z**, respectively.

## 6-Up View

In addition to the views in the 4-Up view, this view contains a Cube view and a sixth view, which is the view most recently displayed (MIP, Render, Transparency, or Cube).

## Transparency View

Transparency rendering (which is only possible when you have acquired the 3D volume using Color or Power mode) lets you adjust the relative transparencies of the color and the gray scale parts of the volume. This can allow hidden features to become visible.

## Render Settings

You can change the way a Transparency view looks using the **3D** buttons. See “Render Settings” on page 212.







# Chapter 19

## DICOM

---

### DICOM on the System

DICOM is not installed as a default on the system. When it is installed, it is set up specially to match your DICOM system and procedures.

**NOTE:** *Changing the DICOM setup can cause your system to not work properly. For example, you may be unable to print to a DICOM printer. All changes to the DICOM setup should be made by qualified service personnel only. Do not try to change the DICOM setup yourself.*

### New Patient Information from a DICOM Worklist

The system may be set up so that you can retrieve a worklist of patients and then select a patient from the worklist.

Depending on how your DICOM system is set up, the worklist may appear as soon as you open the **Patient** window. If the worklist is blank, you can retrieve the information.

#### To retrieve a worklist:

- 1 Use the drop-down window in the upper right corner to select the dates you want the list to include.
- 2 Click **Update**.

The worklist appears in the window. If there are more patients than can fit in the window, you can scroll down to see the rest of the list.

#### To select a patient from the worklist:

- 1 Click the row that contains the patient.  
Now that patient is shown in the fields next to the worklist.
- 2 If required, enter additional information in the fields in the window.

**NOTE:** *You cannot delete a document from the system that is in a queue to be sent to a DICOM device.*

### Saving or Printing to a DICOM Network

#### Filenames of Documents Exported in DICOM Format

The filename of an exported document specifies the date and time the image was captured.

For example, 2D\_20181022\_135426\_FV12345.dcm would be the label on an 2D image of patient FV12345 that was captured on October 22, 2018 at 1:54:26 P.M. (13:54:26).

## Exporting to a PACS

If you have DICOM installed on your system, you can export images and clips to a PACS.

**To archive all documents for a patient or examination or individual documents:**

- 1 Click to select the patient, the examination, or the individual documents you want to archive.
- 2 Click **Export**, and select the **PACS system you want to archive to**.

## Reports

It is possible to export DICOM Structured Reports.

### Queue

When you export to a (PACS), the information is copied and put into a queue to be transferred to the PACS. When the PACS is available, the information is transmitted.

**NOTE:** *If you have an accidental power failure while information is being transferred to the PACS, transfer may fail. Documents and information may not be stored in the PACS even though they appear to have been transferred successfully from the system.*

### DICOM Status

A DICOM status indicator appears by the display values to the right of the image. It has a colored light next to it.

Status Indicator Color	Meaning
Green	No unsent documents. The LED disappears after 5 seconds.
Yellow	A document is being sent or waiting to be sent.
Red	A document was not sent successfully.

Table 19-1. DICOM status indicators.

If you click the DICOM status indicator, the **DICOM Status** window appears.

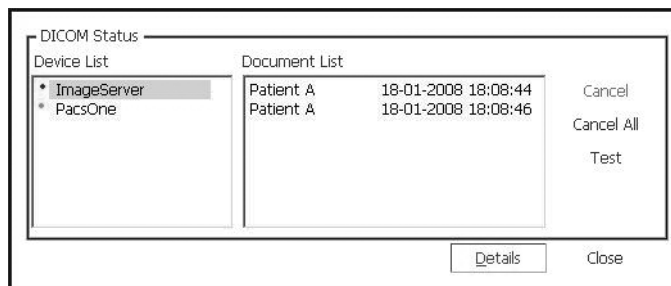


Figure 19-1. The DICOM status window.

The colors of the status indicator next to a device in the **Device List** are the same as described in Table 19-1. If a device has a red or yellow indicator, you can click the device name to see a list of unsent documents displayed in the **Document List**.

You have the following options:

- **Cancel** – cancels the selected document.
- **Clear All** – clear all pending documents or jobs for the selected device.
- **Test** – tests the connection to the selected device (PING + C-ECHO).
- **Details** – see log of DICOM transactions - this is useful for a service technician.
- **Close** – closes the window and does nothing else.

To update the transaction log, click **Update**.

**NOTE:** *You can also open the **DICOM Status** window from the **DICOM Setup** window. See “**DICOM/PACS Tab**” on page 279.*

## **Deleting a Document**

**NOTE:** *You cannot delete a document from the system that is in a queue to be sent to a DICOM device.*



# Appendix A

## Glossary

---

This glossary contains explanations of terms and abbreviations that appear in the user guide or on the monitor. Measurements are listed in Appendix B, “Measurement Abbreviations”.

<b>Term</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>2D Filter</b>	With 2D Filter, an automatic speckle suppression algorithm continuously analyzes the ultrasound image for irregularities and adjusts the smoothness to be applied. This reduces speckle and optimizes the ultrasound image. 2D Filter supports all array transducers (mechanical transducers are not supported).
<b>A/B</b>	Stuart index. PS/ED.
<b>AIUM</b>	American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine.
<b>ALARA</b>	As Low As Reasonably Achievable. Refers to the principle of keeping ultrasound exposure as low as possible.
<b>aliasing</b>	Detection of a false flow in the opposite direction from the real flow. This can occur when the PRF used for the Doppler signal detection is not high enough compared to the flow speed. The problem only exists with pulsed wave Doppler detection.
<b>array transducer</b>	A transducer that consists of a set of transducer elements, each capable of transmitting and receiving ultrasound.
<b>Auto (Cardiac measurement)</b>	PS, ED, RI, PS/ED
<b>B/A</b>	ED/PS
<b>baseline</b>	The baseline separates forward flow from reversed flow in Doppler imaging. Moving the axis can help overcome aliasing problems.
<b>bodymark</b>	A small drawing positioned on the image to help identify it in documentation.
<b>catalog</b>	A list of available items, as in a bodymark catalog or label catalog.
<b>CFM</b>	Color flow mapping. See Color mode.
<b>cine</b>	A function that lets you review a series of previously acquired images.
<b>color box</b>	When Color mode or Power mode imaging is turned on, the color box is superimposed on the 2D image. The color box outlines the area of the tissue in which flow information is available.
<b>color Doppler</b>	See Color mode.

Term	Explanation
<b>Color mode (CFM)</b>	<p>Color-Flow Mapping (CFM). Real-time signal that represents the speed of flowing material in each sample volume within the Color mode image area. The Color mode signal is in principle independent of the amount of flowing material. The Color mode is normally superimposed on a 2D image that shows the anatomical surroundings.</p> <p>Flow directions towards and away from the transducer are represented as different colors in Color mode (e.g. towards = red, away = blue).</p> <p>The Color mode signal (flow speed) is represented by different values in the color mapping (relative measure) for each sample volume in Color mode.</p> <p>No color means either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No flow in the sample volume (very low flow speed) or</li> <li>• Amount of reflection from flowing material (which might have a high flow speed) is below threshold set by the Color mode gain.</li> </ul> <p>The Color mode signal (flow speed) is dependent on the angle of the ultrasound beam relative to the flow direction.</p>
<b>color priority</b>	<p>When color information is superimposed on a 2D image, color can appear outside vessels, making it appear that the flow is not restricted to the vessel. To minimize this effect, you can adjust the color priority. Make the color priority lower to have less color outside the vessels. <b>NOTE:</b> High color priority gives color in more areas; low color priority reduces the number of areas that are colored.</p>
<b>combination mode</b>	<p>Simultaneous imaging in more than one mode, for example, 2D+Color or 2D+Color+Doppler.</p>
<b>Compounding</b>	<p>Compounding is a result of combining images made at up to 5 different angles into one compound image. This reduces speckle and optimizes the ultrasound image. <b>NOTE:</b> In certain cases compounding can remove or suppress some image artifacts such as shadowing (from e.g. kidney stones or cyst edges), which may be used to identify certain characteristics of the imaged anatomy.</p>
<b>CW Doppler</b>	<p>Continuous Wave Doppler. In Continuous Wave (CW) Doppler mode, ultrasound is transmitted along a line as a continuous wave and analyzed as it returns.</p>
<b>DecT</b>	<p>Flow Deceleration Time.</p>

<b>Term</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>depth</b>	With a full 2D image, you adjust the depth to cut out parts below the part you are interested in. The image always includes the transducer surface, so changing depth changes the magnification of the image, stretching, or compressing it. <b>NOTE:</b> To adjust the depth of the image without changing the magnification, use Panning. When the image is panned, the top of the image does not necessarily still correspond to the transducer surface. Adjusting the depth of a zoomed image changes the magnification even though the transducer surface is not necessarily visible at the top of the image.
<b>Doppler mode</b>	(Spectral) Doppler mode. This mode displays information about the spectrum of flow velocities as a function of time. It is sometimes called FFT (Fast Fourier Transform) because the information is presented as a frequency spectrum indicating velocity components.
<b>duplex</b>	Simultaneous imaging in 2 modes. See combination mode.
<b>dynamic range</b>	The number of steps (gray scale change) between black and white.
<b>EDC</b>	Expected date of confinement.
<b>EMC</b>	Electromagnetic compatibility.
<b>ESD</b>	Electrostatic discharge.
<b>Exam Type</b>	An application package containing presets, measuring tools and calculation formulas.
<b>F1, F2</b>	Frequency at position of marker 1 or 2 (when you make a measurement).
<b>FOI</b>	Field of interest. The area within the 2D image where resolution and focus are maximal.
<b>freeze</b>	Stop updating the image so an unchanging image is displayed.
<b>gain</b>	The overall amplification that is applied to ultrasound echoes from all depths.
<b>HIPAA</b>	Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996. American law that sets rules for how patient accounts, billing and medical records must be handled.
<b>IEC</b>	International Electrotechnical Commission.
<b>image review</b>	See cine.
<b>label</b>	Text positioned on the image to label it.
<b>LC</b>	Length of cycle.

<b>Term</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>line density</b>	Line density is a measure of how closely spaced the image lines are in the ultrasound image. Increasing the line density decreases the frame rate so that you get finer resolution but a slower refresh rate (frame rate).
<b>MIP</b>	Maximum Intensity Projection (3D imaging).
<b>NEMA</b>	Association of Electrical and Medical Imaging Equipment Manufacturers (National Electrical Manufacturer's Association)
<b>PACS</b>	Picture Archiving and Communications System (DICOM).
<b>PE</b>	Previous examination.
<b>persistence</b>	Persistence is the amount of time over which 2D image frames are averaged on the monitor. High persistence increases the contrast in the image, but tissue movement will blur a high-persistence image.
<b>PG</b>	Pressure Gradient
<b>phased array</b>	A technique to control the image area by using time delays on an array transducer.
<b>PI</b>	Pulsatility index.
<b>planimetry</b>	Measuring the surface area and perimeter of an object by tracing its boundaries.
<b>POI</b>	Point of interest.
<b>Power Doppler</b>	See Power mode.
<b>Power mode</b>	Power mode (power Doppler) ultrasound displays information about the number of particles moving, rather than their velocity. The signal strength (related to the square of the velocity) increases as the number of flowing particles increases. Thus the amplitude of the signal indicates the amount of blood present and flowing within a sample volume.
<b>power supply cord</b>	The cord that connects the system to the wall outlet or power supply.
<b>PRF</b>	Pulse repetition frequency.
<b>PSA</b>	Prostate-specific antigen.
<b>PSAD</b>	PSA density: PSA divided by prostate volume.
<b>pulse repetition frequency</b>	The rate at which pulses of ultrasound waves are transmitted and received in PW (pulsed-wave) Doppler imaging.



<b>Term</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>PW Doppler</b>	Pulsed wave Doppler. PW Doppler is the primary Doppler mode. In PW Doppler, short bursts (pulses) of ultrasound waves are transmitted at regular intervals and analyzed as they return. The received signals are detected and sent to amplifiers for audio output as well as displayed on the monitor for a visual presentation of the frequency components (spectrum).
<b>Range (of velocities)</b>	You can vary the PRF (pulse repetition frequency) to select the range of Doppler velocities (frequencies) that are color-coded and displayed. Restricting the range allows you to see velocity differences (within the range) in more detail.
<b>Shots per estimate</b>	One way to improve the accuracy of the color-coded velocity information is to increase the number of pulses transmitted in each waveform packet (shots per estimate) at the expense of decreasing the frame rate.
<b>spectral Doppler</b>	See Doppler mode.
<b>SS</b>	Start systole.
<b>steering</b>	You can steer the Doppler beam of a linear transducer to vary the beam angle. This can be useful for examining flow in blood vessels parallel to the transducer surface.
<b>ON/standby button</b>	The switch on the back of the system used for turning the system on and off each day.
<b>TAM</b>	Time Average Mean.
<b>TAMX</b>	Time Average Max.
<b>T-area</b>	Transverse Area.
<b>TEH</b>	True echo harmonics. BK Medical's trademarked term for its pulse inversion tissue harmonic imaging system.
<b>TGC</b>	Time gain control. The TGC curve determines variable amplification applied to echoes from different depths in the tissue. The TGC function compensates for attenuation and scattering of the ultrasound beam in the tissue.
<b>TI</b>	Thermal index. The estimated rise in tissue temperature (in °C) caused by the power emitted by the transducer.
<b>TIB</b>	Thermal index in bone at focal point.
<b>TIC</b>	Thermal index, cranial – bone at surface.
<b>TIS</b>	Thermal index in soft tissue.
<b>triplex</b>	Simultaneous imaging in 3 modes. See combination mode.
<b>voxel</b>	A three-dimensional pixel. A <b>volume pixel</b> .

<b>Term</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>wall filter</b>	A wall filter is used to eliminate low-frequency artifacts (such as Doppler shifts arising from respiratory and cardiac motion or movement of blood vessel walls) in Color, Power and Doppler modes. The wall filter cuts off all frequencies below its cutoff frequency. You can adjust the cut-off frequency.
<b>width</b>	For some transducers, you can increase the width of the image area beyond normal full width. With linear transducer arrays, this is sometimes referred to as Trapezoidal View. You can also narrow the image width to increase frame rate.

## Appendix B

### Measurement Abbreviations

---

Measurement	Explanation
%Reduction	General % reduction tool (using distance tool)
%Reduction	General % reduction tool (using 2 ellipses) to measure stenosis.
2-Caliper Doppler	General 2 Caliper Velocity Tool
2D Trace	General Freehand Tool
A:B Ratio	General A:B Ratio Velocity Tool
AC	Abdominal Circumference
AD Persson	Abdominal Diameter Persson
Angle	General 1 Angle tool
Ao Dist	Aorta Distal
Ao Dist AP	Aorta Distal AP
Ao Dist Ed	Aorta Distal End Diastole
Ao Dist Ps	Aorta Distal Peak Systole
Ao Dist W	Aorta Distal W
Ao Mid	Aorta Mid
Ao Mid AP	Aorta Mid AP
Ao Prox	Aorta Proximal
Ao Prox AP	Aorta Proximal AP
Ao Prox Ed	Aorta Proximal End Diastole
Ao Prox Ps	Aorta Proximal Peak Systole
Ao Prox W	Aorta Proximal W
AODd	Aortic Root Diameter Diastole
APD	Anteroposterior Diameter
ATD	Abdominal Transverse Diameter
Auto	Auto Doppler Calculations (PS, ED, RI, PS/ED)
Average Ultrasound Age	Average Ultrasound Age
Binoc D	Binocular Distance

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Bladder</b>	Bladder Outline
<b>BPD</b>	Biparietal Diameter
<b>CBD</b>	Common Duct
<b>Celiac A</b>	Celiac Artery
<b>Celiac A Ed</b>	Celiac Artery End Diastole
<b>Celiac A Ps</b>	Celiac Artery Peak Systole
<b>Cerebellum</b>	Cerebellum
<b>Cervix L</b>	Cervical Length
<b>Cist Mag</b>	Cisterna Magna
<b>Clav</b>	Clavicle
<b>CO Protocol</b>	Cardiac Output Protocol
<b>CO SI</b>	Cardiac Output Stroke Volume Index
<b>CRL</b>	Crown Rump Length
<b>Curved Distance</b>	General Open Freehand Tool
<b>CX Length</b>	Cervical Length
<b>D1</b>	Diameter 1
<b>D2</b>	Diameter 2
<b>Dist LRA</b>	Left Kidney Distance LRA
<b>Dist LRA Ed</b>	Left Kidney Distance LRA End Diastole
<b>Dist LRA Ps</b>	Left Kidney Distance LRA Peak Systole
<b>Dist RRA</b>	Right Kidney Distance RRA
<b>Dist RRA Ed</b>	Right Kidney Distance RRA End Diastole
<b>Dist RRA Ps</b>	Right Kidney Distance RRA Peak Systole
<b>Distal IVC</b>	Distal IVC
<b>Distal IVC Ed</b>	Distal IVC End Diastole
<b>Distal IVC Ps</b>	Distal IVC Peak Systole
<b>Distance</b>	General Distance Tool
<b>Doppler Trace</b>	General Doppler Trace Tool
<b>Dorsal Vn Dia</b>	Dorsal Vein Diameter Flaccid/Post Injection
<b>D Trace Freehand</b>	Doppler Freehand Trace Tool

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>E/B Ratio</b>	E/B Ratio
<b>Ed</b>	End Diastole
<b>Ellipse</b>	Ellipse (various organs)
<b>Endo Thickness</b>	Endo Thickness
<b>Fibroid 1..5 H</b>	Fibroid 1,2,3,4,5 Height
<b>Fibroid 1..5 L</b>	Fibroid 1,2,3,4,5 Length
<b>Fibroid1..5 W</b>	Fibroid 1,2,3,4,5 Width
<b>Fibula</b>	Fibula
<b>FL</b>	Femur Length
<b>Foot</b>	Foot
<b>GB Wall</b>	Gall Bladder Wall
<b>GS</b>	Gestational Sac
<b>GS Dist</b>	Gestational Sac Distance
<b>HC</b>	Head Circumference
<b>HC - BPD + OFD</b>	Head Circumference - Biparietal Diameter + Occipito-frontal Diameter
<b>Heart Rate</b>	Heart Rate
<b>Height</b>	Height
<b>Hepatic A</b>	Main Hepatic Artery
<b>Hepatic A Ed</b>	Main Hepatic Artery End Diastole
<b>Hepatic A Ps</b>	Main Hepatic Artery Peak Systole
<b>Hip Tool</b>	General 2 Angle Tool
<b>HR</b>	Heart Rate (Doppler/M-mode)
<b>Humerus</b>	Humerus
<b>Innom A</b>	Innominate Artery
<b>Innom A (Dia)</b>	Innominate Artery Diameter
<b>Innom A (Dpt)</b>	Innominate Artery Depth
<b>Innom A Ed</b>	Innominate Artery End Diastole
<b>Innom A Ps</b>	Innominate Artery Peak Systole
<b>Isthmus</b>	Isthmus
<b>IVC</b>	Inferior Vena Cava

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>LADs</b>	Left Atrium Diameter Systole
<b>LADs/AODd</b>	Left Atrium Diameter Systole/Aortic Root Diameter Diastole
<b>Lat Vent</b>	Lateral Ventricular
<b>Length</b>	Length
<b>LHV</b>	Left Hepatic Vein
<b>LHV Ed</b>	Left Hepatic Vein End Diastole
<b>LHV Ps</b>	Left Hepatic Vein Peak Systole
<b>Liver L</b>	Liver Length
<b>LLQ - AFI</b>	Left Lower Quadrant Amniotic Fluid Index
<b>LPV</b>	Left Portal Vein
<b>LPV Ed</b>	Left Portal Vein End Diastole
<b>LPV Ps</b>	Left Portal Vein Peak Systole
<b>Lt AC Bas V (Dia)</b>	Left Antecubital Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Lt AC Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Left Antecubital Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Lt AC Ceph V (Dia)</b>	Left Antecubital Cephalic Vein Diameter
<b>Lt AC Ceph V (Dpt)</b>	Left Antecubital Cephalic Vein Depth
<b>Lt Accessory RA</b>	Left Accessory Renal Artery
<b>Lt Ant Bas V (Dia)</b>	Left Anterior Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Ant Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Left Anterior Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Lt Ant Ceph V (Dia)</b>	Left Anterior Cephalic Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Ant Ceph V (Dpt)</b>	Left Anterior Cephalic Vein Depth
<b>Lt Arcuate RA</b>	Left Arcuate Renal Artery
<b>Lt ATV VCT</b>	Left Anterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Axill A</b>	Left Axillary Artery
<b>Lt Axill A (Dia)</b>	Left Axillary Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Axill A (Dpt)</b>	Left Axillary Artery Depth
<b>Lt Axill A Ed</b>	Left Axillary Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Axill A Ps</b>	Left Axillary Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Axill V (Dia)</b>	Left Axillary Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Axill V (Dpt)</b>	Left Axillary Vein Depth

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Bulb</b>	Left Bulb
<b>Lt Bulb Ed</b>	Left Bulb End Diastole
<b>Lt Bulb Ps</b>	Left Bulb Peak Systole
<b>Lt CAV Auto</b>	Left Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection Auto
<b>Lt CAV Ed</b>	Left Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection End Diastole
<b>Lt CAV Manual</b>	Left Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection Manual
<b>Lt CAV Ps</b>	Left Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection Peak Systole
<b>Lt CFA</b>	Left Common Femoral Artery
<b>Lt CFA (Dia)</b>	Left Common Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Lt CFA (Dpt)</b>	Left Common Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Lt CFA Ed</b>	Left Common Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt CFA Ps</b>	Left Common Femoral Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt CFV (Dia)</b>	Left Common Femoral Vein Diameter
<b>Lt CFV (Dpt)</b>	Left Common Femoral Vein Depth
<b>Lt CFV VCT</b>	Left Common Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt CFV/GSV Jct (Dia)</b>	Left Common Femoral Vein/Greater Saphenous Vein Junction Diameter
<b>Lt CFV/GSV Jct (Dpt)</b>	Left Common Femoral Vein/Greater Saphenous Vein Junction Depth
<b>Lt Common IA</b>	Left Common Iliac Artery
<b>Lt Common IA (Dia)</b>	Left Common Iliac Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Common IA (Dpt)</b>	Left Common Iliac Artery Depth
<b>Lt Common IA Ed</b>	Left Common Iliac Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Common IA Ps</b>	Left Common Iliac Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Common IV VCT</b>	Left Common Iliac Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Corp Lut</b>	Left Corpus Luteum
<b>Lt Dist ATA</b>	Left Distal Anterior Tibial Artery
<b>Lt Dist ATA (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Anterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist ATA (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Anterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist ATA Ed</b>	Left Distal Anterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist ATA Ps</b>	Left Distal Anterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Dist Bas V (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Lt Dist Brach A</b>	Left Distal Brachial Artery
<b>Lt Dist Brach A (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Brachial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Brach A (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Brachial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist Brach A Ed</b>	Left Distal Brachial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist Brach A Ps</b>	Left Distal Brachial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist CCA</b>	Left Distal Common Carotid Artery
<b>Lt Dist CCA Ed</b>	Left Distal Common Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist CCA Ps</b>	Left Distal Common Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist Ceph V LA (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Ceph V LA (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Depth
<b>Lt Dist FV VCT</b>	Left Distal Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Dist ICA</b>	Left Distal Internal Carotid Artery
<b>Lt Dist ICA Ed</b>	Left Distal Internal Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist ICA Ps</b>	Left Distal Internal Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist Pero A</b>	Left Distal Peroneal Artery
<b>Lt Dist Pero A (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Peroneal Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Pero A (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Peroneal Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist Pero A (Ed)</b>	Left Distal Peroneal Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist Pero A (Ps)</b>	Left Distal Peroneal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist Pero V VCT</b>	Left Distal Peroneal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Dist Pop A</b>	Left Distal Popliteal Artery
<b>Lt Dist Pop A (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Popliteal Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Pop A (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Popliteal Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist Pop A Ed</b>	Left Distal Popliteal Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist Pop A Ps</b>	Left Distal Popliteal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist PTA</b>	Left Distal Posterior Tibial Artery
<b>Lt Dist PTA (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Posterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist PTA (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Posterior Tibial Artery Depth



<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Dist PTA Ed</b>	Left Distal Posterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist PTA Ps</b>	Left Distal Posterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist PTV VCT</b>	Left Distal Posterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Dist Rad A</b>	Left Distal Radial Artery
<b>Lt Dist Rad A (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Radial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist Rad A Ed</b>	Left Distal Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist Rad A Ps</b>	Left Distal Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist SFA</b>	Left Distal Superficial Femoral Artery
<b>Lt Dist SFA (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Superficial Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist SFA (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Superficial Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist SFA Ed</b>	Left Distal Superficial Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist SFA Ps</b>	Left Distal Superficial Femoral Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist SSA (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Small Saphenous Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Dist SSA (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Small Saphenous Vein Depth
<b>Lt Dist Subcl A</b>	Left Dist Subclavian Artery
<b>Lt Dist Subcl A Ed</b>	Left Dist Subclavian Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist Subcl A Ps</b>	Left Dist Subclavian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dist Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Left Dist Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Left Dist Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist Uln A</b>	Left Distal Ulnar Artery
<b>Lt Dist Uln A (Dia)</b>	Left Distal Ulnar Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dist Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Left Distal Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dist Uln A Ed</b>	Left Distal Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dist Uln A Ps</b>	Left Distal Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Dor Pedis A</b>	Left Dorsalis Pedis Artery
<b>Lt Dor Pedis A (Dia)</b>	Left Dorsalis Pedis Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Dor Pedis A (Dpt)</b>	Left Dorsalis Pedis Artery Depth
<b>Lt Dor Pedis A Ed</b>	Left Dorsalis Pedis Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Dor Pedis A Ps</b>	Left Dorsalis Pedis Artery Peak Systole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt ECA</b>	Left External Carotid Artery
<b>Lt ECA Ed</b>	Left External Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt ECA Ps</b>	Left External Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Epid H</b>	Left Epid Height
<b>Lt Epid L</b>	Left Epid Length
<b>Lt Epid V</b>	Left Epid Volume
<b>Lt Epid W</b>	Left Epid Width
<b>Lt External IV VCT</b>	Left External Iliac Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Fem V (Dia)</b>	Left Femoral Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Fem V (Dpt)</b>	Left Femoral Vein Depth
<b>Lt Follicle 1..15</b>	Left Follicle 1, 2, 3,..15. Auto, 1-3 distances or Volume (W*H*L), depending on your preferences in the setup.
<b>Lt GNV VCT</b>	Left Gastrocnemius Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt GSV Dist Calf (Dia)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Calf Diameter
<b>Lt GSV Dist Calf (Dpt)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Calf Depth
<b>Lt GSV Dist Thigh (Dia)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Thigh Diameter
<b>Lt GSV Dist Thigh (Dpt)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Thigh Depth
<b>Lt GSV Knee (Dia)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein at Knee Diameter
<b>Lt GSV Knee (Dpt)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein at Knee Depth
<b>Lt GSV Mid Calf (Dia)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Calf Diameter
<b>Lt GSV Mid Calf (Dpt)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Calf Depth
<b>Lt GSV Mid Thigh (Dia)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Thigh Diameter
<b>Lt GSV Mid Thigh (Dpt)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Thigh Depth
<b>Lt GSV Prox Calf (Dia)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Calf Diameter
<b>Lt GSV Prox Calf (Dpt)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Calf Depth
<b>Lt GSV Prox Thigh (Dia)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Thigh Diameter
<b>Lt GSV Prox Thigh (Dpt)</b>	Left Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Thigh Depth
<b>Lt GSV VCT</b>	Left Great Saphenous Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt GSV-Calf VCT</b>	Left Great Saphenous Vein of Calf Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt GSV-Thigh VCT</b>	Left Great Saphenous Vein of Thigh Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Iliac A</b>	Left Iliac Artery

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Iliac A AP</b>	Left Iliac Artery AP
<b>Lt Iliac A Ed</b>	Left Iliac Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Iliac A Ps</b>	Left Iliac Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Iliac A W</b>	Left Iliac Artery W
<b>Lt INF Segmental RA</b>	Left Inferior Segmental Renal Artery
<b>Lt Interlobar RA</b>	Left Interlobar Renal Artery
<b>Lt Interlobular RA</b>	Left Interlobular Renal Artery
<b>Lt Kidney H</b>	Left Kidney Height
<b>Lt Kidney L</b>	Left Kidney Length
<b>Lt Kidney V</b>	Left Kidney Volume
<b>Lt Kidney W</b>	Left Kidney Width
<b>Lt Kidney V L*H*W</b>	Left Kidney Volume Length * Height * Width
<b>Lt Lesion 1..8 H</b>	Left Lesion 1,2,3..8 Height
<b>Lt Lesion 1..8 L</b>	Left Lesion 1,2,3..8 Length
<b>Lt Lesion 1..8 V W*H*L</b>	Left Lesion 1,2,3..8 Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Lt Lesion 1..8 W</b>	Left Lesion 1,2,3..8 Width
<b>Lt Lobe H</b>	Left Lobe Height
<b>Lt Lobe L</b>	Left Lobe Length
<b>Lt Lobe V W*H*L</b>	Left Lobe Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Lt Lobe W</b>	Left Lobe Width
<b>Lt LSV VCT</b>	Left Lesser Saphenous Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Mid ATA</b>	Left Mid Anterior Tibial Artery
<b>Lt Mid ATA (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Anterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Mid ATA (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Anterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Mid ATA Ed</b>	Left Mid Anterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid ATA Ps</b>	Left Mid Anterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Mid Bas V (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Mid Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Lt Mid Brach A</b>	Left Mid Brachial Artery
<b>Lt Mid Brach A (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Brachial Artery Diameter

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Mid Brach A (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Brachial Artery (Depth)
<b>Lt Mid Brach A Ed</b>	Left Mid Brachial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid Brach A Ps</b>	Left Mid Brachial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Mid CCA</b>	Left Mid Common Carotid Artery
<b>Lt Mid CCA Ed</b>	Left Mid Common Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid CCA Ps</b>	Left Mid Common Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Mid Pero A</b>	Left Mid Peroneal Artery
<b>Lt Mid Pero A (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Peroneal Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Mid Pero A (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Peroneal Artery Depth
<b>Lt Mid Pero A Ed</b>	Left Mid Peroneal Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid Pero A Ps</b>	Left Mid Peroneal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Mid Pero V VCT</b>	Left Mid Peroneal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Mid PTA</b>	Left Mid Posterior Tibial Artery
<b>Lt Mid PTA (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Posterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Mid PTA (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Posterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Mid PTA Ed</b>	Left Mid Posterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid PTA Ps</b>	Left Mid Posterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Mid PTV VCT</b>	Left Mid Posterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Mid Rad A</b>	Left Mid Radial Artery
<b>Lt Mid Rad A (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Mid Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Radial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Mid Rad A Ed</b>	Left Mid Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid Rad A Ps</b>	Left Mid Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt MID Segmental RA</b>	Left MID Segmental Renal Artery
<b>Lt Mid SFA</b>	Left Mid Superficial Femoral Artery
<b>Lt Mid SFA (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Superficial Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Mid SFA (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Superficial Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Lt Mid SFA Ed</b>	Left Mid Superficial Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid SFA Ps</b>	Left Mid Superficial Femoral Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Mid SSV (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Small Saphenous Vein Diameter

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Mid SSV (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Small Saphenous Vein Depth
<b>Lt Mid Subcl A</b>	Left Mid Subclavian Artery
<b>Lt Mid Subcl A Ed</b>	Left Mid Subclavian Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid Subcl A Ps</b>	Left Mid Subclavian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Mid Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Mid Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Lt Mid Uln A</b>	Left Mid Ulnar Artery
<b>Lt Mid Uln A (Dia)</b>	Left Mid Ulnar Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Mid Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Left Mid Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Lt Mid Uln A Ed</b>	Left Mid Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Mid Uln A Ps</b>	Left Mid Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Nodule 1..5 H</b>	Left Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Height
<b>Lt Nodule 1..5 L</b>	Left Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Length
<b>Lt Nodule 1..5 V W*H*L</b>	Left Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Lt Nodule 1..5 W</b>	Left Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Width
<b>Lt Ovarian A</b>	Left Maternal Ovarian Artery
<b>Lt Ovarian A Ed</b>	Left Maternal Ovarian Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Ovarian A Ps</b>	Left Maternal Ovarian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Ovary H</b>	Left Ovary Height
<b>Lt Ovary L</b>	Left Ovary Length
<b>Lt Ovary V L*H*W</b>	Left Ovary Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Lt Ovary W</b>	Left Ovary Width
<b>Lt Ovary Lesion 1..5 H</b>	Left Ovary Lesion 1,2,3,4,5 Height
<b>Lt Ovary Lesion 1..5 L</b>	Left Ovary Lesion 1,2,3,4,5 Length
<b>Lt Ovary Lesion 1..5 W</b>	Left Ovary Lesion 1,2,3,4,5 Width
<b>Lt Perf-Boyd VCT</b>	Left Boyd's Perforating Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Perf-Cockett VCT</b>	Left Cockett's Perforating Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Perf-Hunterian VCT</b>	Left Hunterian Perforating Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt PFA</b>	Left Profunda Artery
<b>Lt PFA (Dia)</b>	Left Profunda Artery Diameter

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
Lt PFA (Dpt)	Left Profunda Artery Depth
Lt PFA Ed	Left Profunda Artery End Diastole
Lt PFA Ps	Left Profunda Artery Peak Systole
Lt PFV VCT	Left Profunda Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
Lt Pop V VCT	Left Popliteal Vein Valve Closure Time
Lt Prox ATA	Left Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery
Lt Prox ATA (Dia)	Left Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery Diameter
Lt Prox ATA (Dpt)	Left Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery Depth
Lt Prox ATA Ed	Left Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
Lt Prox ATA Ps	Left Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
Lt Prox Bas V (Dia)	Left Proximal Basilic Vein Diameter
Lt Prox Bas V (Dpt)	Left Proximal Basilic Vein Depth
Lt Prox Brach A	Left Proximal Brachial Artery
Lt Prox Brach A (Dia)	Left Proximal Brachial Artery Diameter
Lt Prox Brach A (Dpt)	Left Proximal Brachial Artery Depth
Lt Prox Brach A Ed	Left Proximal Brachial Artery End Diastole
Lt Prox Brach A Ps	Left Proximal Brachial Artery Peak Systole
Lt Prox CCA	Left Proximal Common Carotid Artery
Lt Prox CCA Ed	Left Proximal Common Carotid Artery End Diastole
Lt Prox CCA Ps	Left Proximal Common Carotid Artery Peak Systole
Lt Prox Ceph V LA (Dia)	Left Proximal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Diameter
Lt Prox Ceph V LA (Dpt)	Left Proximal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Depth
Lt Prox Ceph V UA (Dia)	Left Proximal Cephalic Vein Upper Arm Diameter
Lt Prox Ceph V UA (Dpt)	Left Proximal Cephalic Vein Upper Arm Depth
Lt Prox FV VCT	Left Proximal Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
Lt Prox ICA	Left Proximal Internal Carotid Artery
Lt Prox ICA Ed	Left Proximal Internal Carotid Artery End Diastole
Lt Prox ICA Ps	Left Proximal Internal Carotid Artery Peak Systole
Lt Prox Pero A	Left Proximal Peroneal Artery
Lt Prox Pero A (Dia)	Left Proximal Peroneal Artery Diameter

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Prox Pero A (Dpt)</b>	Left Proximal Peroneal Artery Depth
<b>Lt Prox Pero A Ed</b>	Left Proximal Peroneal Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Prox Pero A Ps</b>	Left Proximal Peroneal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Prox Pero V VCT</b>	Left Proximal Peroneal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Prox Pop A</b>	Left Proximal Popliteal Artery
<b>Lt Prox Pop A (Dia)</b>	Left Proximal Popliteal Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Prox Pop A (Dpt)</b>	Left Proximal Popliteal Artery Depth
<b>Lt Prox Pop A Ed</b>	Left Proximal Popliteal Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Prox Pop A Ps</b>	Left Proximal Popliteal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Prox PTA</b>	Left Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery
<b>Lt Prox PTA (Dia)</b>	Left Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Prox PTA (Dpt)</b>	Left Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Prox PTA Ed</b>	Left Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Prox PTA Ps</b>	Left Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Prox PTV VCT</b>	Left Proximal Posterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Prox Rad A</b>	Left Proximal Radial Artery
<b>Lt Prox Rad A (Dia)</b>	Left Proximal Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Prox Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Left Proximal Radial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Prox Rad A Ed</b>	Left Proximal Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Prox Rad A Ps</b>	Left Proximal Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Prox SFA</b>	Left Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery
<b>Lt Prox SFA (Dia)</b>	Left Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Prox SFA (Dpt)</b>	Left Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Lt Prox SFA Ed</b>	Left Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Prox SFA Ps</b>	Left Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Prox SSV (Dia)</b>	Left Proximal Small Saphenous Vein Diameter
<b>Lt Prox SSV (Dpt)</b>	Left Proximal Small Saphenous Vein Depth
<b>Lt Prox Subcl A</b>	Left Prox Subclavian Artery
<b>Lt Prox Subcl A Ed</b>	Left Prox Subclavian Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Prox Subcl A Ps</b>	Left Prox Subclavian Artery Peak Systolic

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Prox Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Left Prox Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Prox Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Left Prox Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Lt Prox Uln A</b>	Left Proximal Ulnar Artery
<b>Lt Prox Uln A (Dia)</b>	Left Proximal Ulnar Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Prox Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Left Proximal Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Lt Prox Uln A Ed</b>	Left Proximal Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Prox Uln A Ps</b>	Left Proximal Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Rad A</b>	Left Radial Artery
<b>Lt Rad A (Dia)</b>	Left Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Left Radial Artery Depth
<b>Lt Rad A Ed</b>	Left Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Rad A Ps</b>	Left Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Renal Hilum</b>	Left Renal Hilum
<b>Lt SFJ VCT</b>	Left Saphenofemoral Junction Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt Skin Thickness</b>	Left Testicle Skin Thickness
<b>Lt SLV VCT</b>	Left Soleal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Lt SSV/Pop Jct (Dia)</b>	Left Small Saphenous Vein/Popliteal Junction Diameter
<b>Lt SSV/Pop Jct (Dpt)</b>	Left Small Saphenous Vein/Popliteal Junction Depth
<b>Lt Subclav A</b>	Left Subclavian Artery
<b>Lt Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Left Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Lt Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Left Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Lt Subclav A Ed</b>	Left Subclavian Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Subclav A Ps</b>	Left Subclavian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt SUP Segmental RA</b>	Left Superior Segmental Renal Artery
<b>Lt Testicle H</b>	Left Testicle Height
<b>Lt Testicle L</b>	Left Testicle Length
<b>Lt Testicle V</b>	Left Testicle Volume
<b>Lt Testicle W</b>	Left Testicle Width
<b>Lt Uln A</b>	Left Ulnar Artery
<b>Lt Uln A (Dia)</b>	Left Ulnar Artery Diameter



<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Lt Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Left Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Lt Uln A Ed</b>	Left Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Uln A Ps</b>	Left Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Lt Uterine A</b>	Left Maternal Uterine Artery
<b>Lt Vertebral A</b>	Left Vertebral Artery
<b>Lt Vertebral A Ed</b>	Left Vertebral Artery End Diastole
<b>Lt Vertebral A Ps</b>	Left Vertebral Artery Peak Systole
<b>LUQ - AFI</b>	Left Upper Quadrant Amniotic Fluid Index
<b>LV Protocol</b>	Left Ventricle Protocol
<b>LV Single Plane</b>	Left Ventricle Single Plane
<b>LVd</b>	Left Ventricle Diastole
<b>LVd Single Plane</b>	Left Ventricle Diastole Single Plane
<b>LVOT VTI</b>	Velocity Time Integral Left Ventricle Outflow Tract
<b>LVOTDs</b>	Left Ventricular Outflow Tract Diameter, systole
<b>LVs</b>	Left Ventricle Systole
<b>LVs Single Plane</b>	Left Ventricle Systole Single Plane
<b>M Distance</b>	General M-mode Distance Tool
<b>MAPSE</b>	Mitral Annular Plane Systolic Excursion
<b>MHV</b>	Middle Hepatic Vein
<b>MHV Ed</b>	Middle Hepatic Vein End Diastole
<b>MVH Ps</b>	Middle Hepatic Vein Peak Systole
<b>Mid LRA</b>	Left Kidney Mid LRA
<b>Mid LRA Ed</b>	Left Kidney Mid LRA
<b>Mid LRA Ps</b>	Left Kidney Mid LRA
<b>Mid RRA</b>	Right Kidney Mid RRA
<b>Mid RRA Ed</b>	Right Kidney Mid RRA End Diastole
<b>Mid RRA Ps</b>	Right Kidney Mid RRA Peak Systole
<b>MPV</b>	Main Portal Vein
<b>MPV Ed</b>	Main Portal Vein End Diastole
<b>MPV Ps</b>	Main Portal Vein Peak Systole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>MSS</b>	Mitral Septal Separation
<b>Nuc Translucency</b>	Nuchal Translucency
<b>Nuchal Thick</b>	Nuchal Fold Thickness
<b>OFD</b>	Occipito-frontal Diameter
<b>Planimetry (Freehand)</b>	Prostate Volume
<b>Post Void BI Ellipse</b>	Post Void Bladder Ellipse
<b>Post Void BI H</b>	Post Void Bladder Height
<b>Post Void BI L</b>	Post Void Bladder Length
<b>Post Void BI V Ellipse</b>	Post Void Bladder Volume Ellipse
<b>Post Void BI V W*H*L</b>	Post Void Bladder Volume Width*Height*Length
<b>Post Void BI W</b>	Post Void Bladder Width
<b>Pre Void BI Ellipse</b>	Pre Void Bladder Ellipse
<b>Pre Void BI H</b>	Pre Void Bladder Height
<b>Pre Void BI L</b>	Pre Void Bladder Length
<b>Pre Void BI V Ellipse</b>	Pre Void Bladder Volume Ellipse
<b>Pre Void BI V W*H*L</b>	Pre Void Bladder Width*Height*Length
<b>Pre Void BI W</b>	Pre Void Bladder Width
<b>Prostate Ellipse</b>	Prostate Ellipse
<b>Prostate H</b>	Prostate Height
<b>Prostate L</b>	Prostate Length
<b>Prostate V Ellipse</b>	Prostate Volume Ellipse
<b>Prostate V W*H*L</b>	Prostate Volume Width*Height*Length
<b>Prostate W</b>	Prostate Width
<b>Prox IVC Ed</b>	Proximal IVC End Diastole
<b>Prox IVC Ps</b>	Proximal IVC Peak Systole
<b>Prox IVC</b>	Proximal IVC
<b>Prox LRA</b>	Left Kidney Proximal LRA
<b>Prox LRA Ed</b>	Left Kidney Proximal LRA End Diastole
<b>Prox LRA Ps</b>	Left Kidney Proximal LRA Peak Systole
<b>Prox RRA</b>	Right Kidney Proximal RRA

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Prox RRA Ed</b>	Right Kidney Proximal RRA End Diastole
<b>Prox RRA Ps</b>	Right Kidney Proximal RRA Peak Systole
<b>Ps</b>	Peak Systole
<b>PSAD</b>	PSAD
<b>Real-Time</b>	Real-Time
<b>Rectum</b>	Rectum Outline
<b>RHV</b>	Right Hepatic Vein
<b>RHV Ed</b>	Right Hepatic Vein End Diastole
<b>RHV Ps</b>	Right Hepatic Vein Peak Systole
<b>RLQ - AFI</b>	Right Lower Quadrant Amniotic Fluid Index
<b>RPV</b>	Right Portal Vein
<b>RPV Ed</b>	Right Portal Vein End Diastole
<b>RPV Ps</b>	Right Portal Vein Peak Systole
<b>Rt AC Bas V (Dia)</b>	Right Antecubital Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Rt AC Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Right Antecubital Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Rt AC Ceph V (Dia)</b>	Right Antecubital Cephalic Vein Diameter
<b>Rt AC Ceph V (Dpt)</b>	Right Antecubital Cephalic Vein Depth
<b>Rt Accessory RA</b>	Right Accessory Renal Artery
<b>Rt Ant Bas V (Dia)</b>	Right Anterior Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Ant Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Right Anterior Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Rt Ant Ceph V (Dia)</b>	Right Anterior Cephalic Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Ant Ceph V (Dpt)</b>	Right Anterior Cephalic Vein Depth
<b>Rt Arcuate RA</b>	Right Arcuate Renal Artery
<b>Rt ATV VCT</b>	Right Anterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Axill A</b>	Right Axillary Artery
<b>Rt Axill A (Dia)</b>	Right Axillary Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Axill A (Dpt)</b>	Right Axillary Artery Depth
<b>Rt Axill A Ed</b>	Right Axillary Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Axill A Ps</b>	Right Axillary Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Axill V (Dia)</b>	Right Axillary Vein Diameter

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Axill V (Dpt)</b>	Right Axillary Vein Depth
<b>Rt Bulb</b>	Right Bulb
<b>Rt Bulb Ed</b>	Right Bulb End Diastole
<b>Rt Bulb Ps</b>	Right Bulb Peak Systole
<b>Rt CAV Auto</b>	Right Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection Auto
<b>Rt CAV Ed</b>	Right Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection End Diastole
<b>Rt CAV Manual</b>	Right Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection Manual
<b>Rt CAV Ps</b>	Right Cavernosal Artery Flaccid/Post Injection Peak Systole
<b>Rt CFA</b>	Right Common Femoral Artery
<b>Rt CFA (Dia)</b>	Right Common Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Rt CFA (Dpt)</b>	Right Common Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Rt CFA Ed</b>	Right Common Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt CFA Ps</b>	Right Common Femoral Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt CFV (Dia)</b>	Right Common Femoral Vein Diameter
<b>Rt CFV (Dpt)</b>	Right Common Femoral Vein Depth
<b>Rt CFV VCT</b>	Right Common Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt CFV/GSV Jct (Dia)</b>	Right Common Femoral Vein/Greater Saphenous Vein Junction Diameter
<b>Rt CFV/GSV Jct (Dpt)</b>	Right Common Femoral Vein/Greater Saphenous Vein Junction Depth
<b>Rt Common IA</b>	Right Common Iliac Artery
<b>Rt Common IA (Dia)</b>	Right Common Iliac Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Common IA (Dpt)</b>	Right Common Iliac Artery Depth
<b>Rt Common IA</b>	Right Common Iliac Artery
<b>Rt Common IA</b>	Right Common Iliac Artery
<b>Rt Common IV VCT</b>	Right Common Iliac Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Corp Lut</b>	Right Corpus Luteum
<b>Rt Dist ATA</b>	Right Distal Anterior Tibial Artery
<b>Rt Dist ATA (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Anterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist ATA (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Anterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist ATA Ed</b>	Right Distal Anterior Tibial Artery End Diastole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Dist ATA Ps</b>	Right Distal Anterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist Bas V (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Rt Dist Brach A</b>	Right Distal Brachial Artery
<b>Rt Dist Brach A (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Brachial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Brach A (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Brachial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist Brach A Ed</b>	Right Distal Brachial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist Brach A Ps</b>	Right Distal Brachial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist CCA</b>	Right Distal Common Carotid Artery
<b>Rt Dist CCA Ed</b>	Right Distal Common Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist CCA Ps</b>	Right Distal Common Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist Ceph V LA (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Ceph V LA (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Depth
<b>Rt Dist FV VCT</b>	Right Distal Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Dist ICA</b>	Right Distal Internal Carotid Artery
<b>Rt Dist ICA Ed</b>	Right Distal Internal Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist ICA Ps</b>	Right Distal Internal Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist Pero A</b>	Right Distal Peroneal Artery
<b>Rt Dist Pero A (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Peroneal Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Pero A (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Peroneal Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist Pero A (Ed)</b>	Right Distal Peroneal Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist Pero A (Ps)</b>	Right Distal Peroneal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist Pero V VCT</b>	Right Distal Peroneal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Dist Pop A</b>	Right Distal Popliteal Artery
<b>Rt Dist Pop A (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Popliteal Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Pop A (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Popliteal Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist Pop A Ed</b>	Right Distal Popliteal Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist Pop A Ps</b>	Right Distal Popliteal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist PTA</b>	Right Distal Posterior Tibial Artery
<b>Rt Dist PTA (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Posterior Tibial Artery Diameter

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Dist PTA (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Posterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist PTA Ed</b>	Right Distal Posterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist PTA Ps</b>	Right Distal Posterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist PTV VCT</b>	Right Distal Posterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Dist Rad A</b>	Right Distal Radial Artery
<b>Rt Dist Rad A (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Radial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist Rad A Ed</b>	Right Distal Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist Rad A Ps</b>	Right Distal Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist SFA</b>	Right Distal Superficial Femoral Artery
<b>Rt Dist SFA (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Superficial Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist SFA (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Superficial Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist SFA Ed</b>	Right Distal Superficial Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist SFA Ps</b>	Right Distal Superficial Femoral Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist SSA (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Small Saphenous Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Dist SSA (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Small Saphenous Vein Depth
<b>Rt Dist Subcl A</b>	Right Dist Subclavian Artery
<b>Rt Dist Subcl A Ed</b>	Right Dist Subclavian Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist Subcl A Ps</b>	Right Dist Subclavian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dist Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Right Dist Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Right Dist Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist Uln A</b>	Right Distal Ulnar Artery
<b>Rt Dist Uln A (Dia)</b>	Right Distal Ulnar Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dist Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Right Distal Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dist Uln A Ed</b>	Right Distal Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Dist Uln A Ps</b>	Right Distal Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Dor Pedis A</b>	Right Dorsalis Pedis Artery
<b>Rt Dor Pedis A (Dia)</b>	Right Dorsalis Pedis Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Dor Pedis A (Dpt)</b>	Right Dorsalis Pedis Artery Depth
<b>Rt Dor Pedis A Ed</b>	Right Dorsalis Pedis Artery End Diastole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Dor Pedis A Ps</b>	Right Dorsalis Pedis Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt ECA</b>	Right External Carotid Artery
<b>Rt ECA Ed</b>	Right External Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt ECA Ps</b>	Right External Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Epid H</b>	Right Epid Height
<b>Rt Epid L</b>	Right Epid Length
<b>Rt Epid V</b>	Right Epid Volume
<b>Rt Epid W</b>	Right Epid Width
<b>Rt External IV VCT</b>	Right External Iliac Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Fem V (Dia)</b>	Right Femoral Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Fem V (Dpt)</b>	Right Femoral Vein Depth
<b>Rt Follicle 1..15</b>	Right Follicle 1, 2, 3,..15. Auto, 1-3 distances or Volume (W*H*L), depending on your preferences in the setup.
<b>Rt GNV VCT</b>	Right Gastrocnemius Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt GSV Dist Calf (Dia)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Calf Diameter
<b>Rt GSV Dist Calf (Dpt)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Calf Depth
<b>Rt GSV Dist Thigh (Dia)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Thigh Diameter
<b>Rt GSV Dist Thigh (Dpt)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Distal Thigh Depth
<b>Rt GSV Knee (Dia)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein at Knee Diameter
<b>Rt GSV Knee (Dpt)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein at Knee Depth
<b>Rt GSV Mid Calf (Dia)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Calf Diameter
<b>Rt GSV Mid Calf (Dpt)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Calf Depth
<b>Rt GSV Mid Thigh (Dia)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Thigh Diameter
<b>Rt GSV Mid Thigh (Dpt)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Mid Thigh Depth
<b>Rt GSV Prox Calf (Dia)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Calf Diameter
<b>Rt GSV Prox Calf (Dpt)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Calf Depth
<b>Rt GSV Prox Thigh (Dia)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Thigh Diameter
<b>Rt GSV Prox Thigh (Dpt)</b>	Right Greater Saphenous Vein Proximal Thigh Depth
<b>Rt GSV VCT</b>	Right Great Saphenous Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt GSV-Calf VCT</b>	Right Great Saphenous Vein of Calf Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt GSV-Thigh VCT</b>	Right Great Saphenous Vein of Thigh Valve Closure Time

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Iliac A</b>	Right Iliac Artery
<b>Rt Iliac A AP</b>	Right Iliac Artery AP
<b>Rt Iliac A Ed</b>	Right Iliac Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Iliac A Ps</b>	Right Iliac Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Iliac A W</b>	Right Iliac Artery W
<b>Rt INF Segmental RA</b>	Right Inferior Segmental Renal Artery
<b>Rt Interlobar RA</b>	Right Interlobar Renal Artery
<b>Rt Interlobular RA</b>	Right Interlobular Renal Artery
<b>Rt Kidney H</b>	Right Kidney Height
<b>Rt Kidney L</b>	Right Kidney Length
<b>Rt Kidney V</b>	Right Kidney Volume
<b>Rt Kidney W</b>	Right Kidney Width
<b>Rt Kidney V L*H*W</b>	Right Kidney Volume Length * Height * Width
<b>Rt Lesion 1..8 H</b>	Right Lesion 1,2,3..8 Height
<b>Rt Lesion 1..8 L</b>	Right Lesion 1,2,3..8 Length
<b>Rt Lesion 1..8 V W*H*L</b>	Right Lesion 1,2,3..8 Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Rt Lesion 1..8 W</b>	Right Lesion 1,2,3..8 Width
<b>Rt Lobe H</b>	Right Lobe Height
<b>Rt Lobe L</b>	Right Lobe Length
<b>Rt Lobe V W*H*L</b>	Right Lobe Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Rt Lobe W</b>	Right Lobe Width
<b>Rt LSV VCT</b>	Right Lesser Saphenous Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Mid ATA</b>	Right Mid Anterior Tibial Artery
<b>Rt Mid ATA (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Anterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid ATA (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Anterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Mid ATA Ed</b>	Right Mid Anterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid ATA Ps</b>	Right Mid Anterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Mid Bas V (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Mid Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Rt Mid Brach A</b>	Right Mid Brachial Artery



<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Mid Brach A (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Brachial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid Brach A (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Brachial Artery (Depth)
<b>Rt Mid Brach A Ed</b>	Right Mid Brachial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid Brach A Ps</b>	Right Mid Brachial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Mid CCA</b>	Right Mid Common Carotid Artery
<b>Rt Mid CCA Ed</b>	Right Mid Common Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid CCA Ps</b>	Right Mid Common Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Mid Pero A</b>	Right Mid Peroneal Artery
<b>Rt Mid Pero A (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Peroneal Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid Pero A (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Peroneal Artery Depth
<b>Rt Mid Pero A Ed</b>	Right Mid Peroneal Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid Pero A Ps</b>	Right Mid Peroneal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Mid Pero V VCT</b>	Right Mid Peroneal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Mid PTA</b>	Right Mid Posterior Tibial Artery
<b>Rt Mid PTA (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Posterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid PTA (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Posterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Mid PTA Ed</b>	Right Mid Posterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid PTA Ps</b>	Right Mid Posterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Mid PTV VCT</b>	Right Mid Posterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Mid Rad A</b>	Right Mid Radial Artery
<b>Rt Mid Rad A (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Radial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Mid Rad A Ed</b>	Right Mid Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid Rad A Ps</b>	Right Mid Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt MID Segmental RA</b>	Right MID Segmental Renal Artery
<b>Rt Mid SFA</b>	Right Mid Superficial Femoral Artery
<b>Rt Mid SFA (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Superficial Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid SFA (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Superficial Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Rt Mid SFA Ed</b>	Right Mid Superficial Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid SFA Ps</b>	Right Mid Superficial Femoral Artery Peak Systole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Mid SSV (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Small Saphenous Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Mid SSV (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Small Saphenous Vein Depth
<b>Rt Mid Subcl A</b>	Right Mid Subclavian Artery
<b>Rt Mid Subcl A Ed</b>	Right Mid Subclavian Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid Subcl A Ps</b>	Right Mid Subclavian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Mid Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Rt Mid Uln A</b>	Right Mid Ulnar Artery
<b>Rt Mid Uln A (Dia)</b>	Right Mid Ulnar Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Mid Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Right Mid Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Rt Mid Uln A Ed</b>	Right Mid Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Mid Uln A Ps</b>	Right Mid Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Nodule 1..5 H</b>	Right Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Height
<b>Rt Nodule 1..5 L</b>	Right Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Length
<b>Rt Nodule 1..5 V W*H*L</b>	Right Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Rt Nodule 1..5 W</b>	Right Nodule 1,2,3,4,5 Width
<b>Rt Ovarian A</b>	Right Maternal Ovarian Artery
<b>Rt Ovarian A Ed</b>	Right Maternal Ovarian Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Ovarian A Ps</b>	Right Maternal Ovarian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Ovary H</b>	Right Ovary Height
<b>Rt Ovary L</b>	Right Ovary Length
<b>Rt Ovary V L*H*W</b>	Right Ovary Volume Width * Height * Length
<b>Rt Ovary W</b>	Right Ovary Width
<b>Rt Ovary Lesion 1..5 H</b>	Right Ovary Lesion 1,2,3,4,5 Height
<b>Rt Ovary Lesion 1..5 L</b>	Right Ovary Lesion 1,2,3,4,5 Length
<b>Rt Ovary Lesion 1..5 W</b>	Right Ovary Lesion 1,2,3,4,5 Width
<b>Rt Perf-Boyd VCT</b>	Right Boyd's Perforating Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Perf-Cockett VCT</b>	Right Cockett's Perforating Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Perf-Hunterian VCT</b>	Right Hunterian Perforating Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt PFA</b>	Right Profunda Artery

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt PFA (Dia)</b>	Right Profunda Artery Diameter
<b>Rt PFA (Dpt)</b>	Right Profunda Artery Depth
<b>Rt PFA Ed</b>	Right Profunda Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt PFA Ps</b>	Right Profunda Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt PFV VCT</b>	Right Profunda Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Pop V VCT</b>	Right Popliteal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Prox ATA</b>	Right Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery
<b>Rt Prox ATA (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox ATA (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox ATA Ed</b>	Right Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox ATA Ps</b>	Right Proximal Anterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox Bas V (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Basilic Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Bas V (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Basilic Vein Depth
<b>Rt Prox Brach A</b>	Right Proximal Brachial Artery
<b>Rt Prox Brach A (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Brachial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Brach A (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Brachial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox Brach A Ed</b>	Right Proximal Brachial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox Brach A Ps</b>	Right Proximal Brachial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox CCA</b>	Right Proximal Common Carotid Artery
<b>Rt Prox CCA Ed</b>	Right Proximal Common Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox CCA Ps</b>	Right Proximal Common Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox Ceph V LA (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Ceph V LA (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Cephalic Vein Lower Arm Depth
<b>Rt Prox Ceph V UA (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Cephalic Vein Upper Arm Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Ceph V UA (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Cephalic Vein Upper Arm Depth
<b>Rt Prox FV VCT</b>	Right Proximal Femoral Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Prox ICA</b>	Right Proximal Internal Carotid Artery
<b>Rt Prox ICA Ed</b>	Right Proximal Internal Carotid Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox ICA Ps</b>	Right Proximal Internal Carotid Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox Pero A</b>	Right Proximal Peroneal Artery

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Prox Pero A (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Peroneal Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Pero A (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Peroneal Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox Pero A Ed</b>	Right Proximal Peroneal Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox Pero A Ps</b>	Right Proximal Peroneal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox Pero V VCT</b>	Right Proximal Peroneal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Prox Pop A</b>	Right Proximal Popliteal Artery
<b>Rt Prox Pop A (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Popliteal Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Pop A (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Popliteal Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox Pop A Ed</b>	Right Proximal Popliteal Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox Pop A Ps</b>	Right Proximal Popliteal Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox PTA</b>	Right Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery
<b>Rt Prox PTA (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox PTA (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox PTA Ed</b>	Right Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox PTA Ps</b>	Right Proximal Posterior Tibial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox PTV VCT</b>	Right Proximal Posterior Tibial Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Prox Rad A</b>	Right Proximal Radial Artery
<b>Rt Prox Rad A (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Radial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox Rad A Ed</b>	Right Proximal Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox Rad A Ps</b>	Right Proximal Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox SFA</b>	Right Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery
<b>Rt Prox SFA (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox SFA (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox SFA Ed</b>	Right Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox SFA Ps</b>	Right Proximal Superficial Femoral Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Prox SSV (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Small Saphenous Vein Diameter
<b>Rt Prox SSV (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Small Saphenous Vein Depth
<b>Rt Prox Subcl A</b>	Right Prox Subclavian Artery
<b>Rt Prox Subcl A Ed</b>	Right Prox Subclavian Artery End Diastole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Prox Subcl A Ps</b>	Right Prox Subclavian Artery Peak Systolic
<b>Rt Prox Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Right Prox Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Right Prox Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox Uln A</b>	Right Proximal Ulnar Artery
<b>Rt Prox Uln A (Dia)</b>	Right Proximal Ulnar Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Prox Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Right Proximal Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Rt Prox Uln A Ed</b>	Right Proximal Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Prox Uln A Ps</b>	Right Proximal Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Rad A</b>	Right Radial Artery
<b>Rt Rad A (Dia)</b>	Right Radial Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Rad A (Dpt)</b>	Right Radial Artery Depth
<b>Rt Rad A Ed</b>	Right Radial Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Rad A Ps</b>	Right Radial Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Renal Hilum</b>	Right Renal Hilum
<b>Rt SFJ VCT</b>	Right Saphenofemoral Junction Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt Skin Thickness</b>	Right Testicle Skin Thickness
<b>Rt SLV VCT</b>	Right Soleal Vein Valve Closure Time
<b>Rt SSV/Pop Jct (Dia)</b>	Right Small Saphenous Vein/Popliteal Junction Diameter
<b>Rt SSV/Pop Jct (Dpt)</b>	Right Small Saphenous Vein/Popliteal Junction Depth
<b>Rt Subclav A</b>	Right Subclavian Artery
<b>Rt Subclav A (Dia)</b>	Right Subclavian Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Subclav A (Dpt)</b>	Right Subclavian Artery Depth
<b>Rt Subclav A Ed</b>	Right Subclavian Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Subclav A Ps</b>	Right Subclavian Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt SUP Segmental RA</b>	Right Superior Segmental Renal Artery
<b>Rt Testicle H</b>	Right Testicle Height
<b>Rt Testicle L</b>	Right Testicle Length
<b>Rt Testicle V</b>	Right Testicle Volume
<b>Rt Testicle W</b>	Right Testicle Width
<b>Rt Uln A</b>	Right Ulnar Artery

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Rt Uln A (Dia)</b>	Right Ulnar Artery Diameter
<b>Rt Uln A (Dpt)</b>	Right Ulnar Artery Depth
<b>Rt Uln A Ed</b>	Right Ulnar Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Uln A Ps</b>	Right Ulnar Artery Peak Systole
<b>Rt Uterine A</b>	Right Maternal Uterine Artery
<b>Rt Vertebral A</b>	Right Vertebral Artery
<b>Rt Vertebral A Ed</b>	Right Vertebral Artery End Diastole
<b>Rt Vertebral A Ps</b>	Right Vertebral Artery Peak Systole
<b>RUQ - AFI</b>	Right Upper Quadrant Amniotic Fluid Index
<b>RVDd</b>	Right Ventricle Diameter Diastole
<b>RVSP</b>	Right Ventricle Systolic Pressure
<b>Seminal Vesicles</b>	Seminal Vesicles Outline
<b>SI</b>	Stroke Volume Index
<b>SI Single Plane</b>	Stroke Volume Index Single Plane
<b>SMA</b>	Superior Mesenteric A
<b>SMA Ed</b>	Superior Mesenteric A End Diastole
<b>SMA Ps</b>	Superior Mesenteric A Peak Systole
<b>SMV</b>	Sup Mesenteric Vein
<b>SMV Ed</b>	Sup Mesenteric Vein End Systole
<b>SMV Ps</b>	Sup Mesenteric Vein Peak Systole
<b>Spleen H</b>	Spleen Height
<b>Spleen L</b>	Spleen Length
<b>Spleen V L*H*W</b>	Spleen Volume Length * Height * Width
<b>Spleen W</b>	Spleen Width
<b>Splenic A</b>	Splenic Artery
<b>Splenic A Ed</b>	Splenic Artery End Diastole
<b>Splenic A Ps</b>	Splenic Artery Peak Systole
<b>Splenic V</b>	Splenic Vein
<b>Splenic V Ed</b>	Splenic Vein End Diastole
<b>Splenic V Ps</b>	Splenic Vein Peak Systole

<b>Measurement</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>Strain Ratio</b>	General Strain Ratio Tool
<b>TAPSE</b>	Tricuspid Annular Plane Systolic Excursion
<b>Tibia</b>	Tibia
<b>Ulna</b>	Ulna
<b>Umb A</b>	Umbilical Artery
<b>Urethra</b>	Urethra Outline
<b>Uterus H</b>	Uterus Height
<b>Uterus L</b>	Uterus Length
<b>Uterus V L*H*W</b>	Uterus Volume Length * Height * Width
<b>Uterus W</b>	Uterus Width
<b>Velocity</b>	Velocity
<b>VF Auto</b>	Volume Flow Auto Doppler
<b>VF Dist</b>	Volume Flow Distance
<b>Volume</b>	General Volume Tool using Ellipse/3 distances
<b>Volume Flow</b>	General Volume Flow Tool
<b>Width</b>	Width
<b>Yolk Sac</b>	Yolk Sac





## Appendix C

# Setting Up and Customizing Your System

The bk3000 and bk5000 include default setups that were created to optimize the ultrasound images and make it easy for you to use the different transducers, Exam Types, and Presets. You can customize the system so that it is easy to enter and select exactly the information you need.

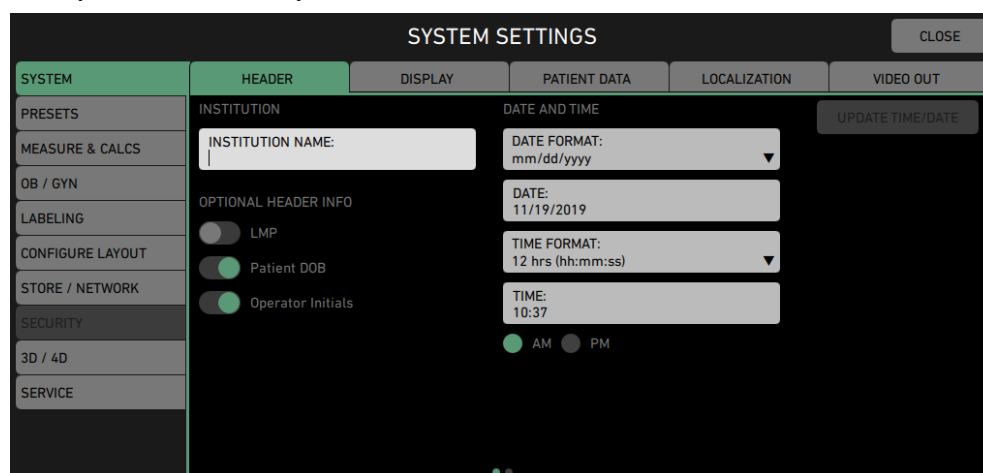


Figure C-1. The Settings screen

In the settings screen, you can select to customize the following:

- **System** for Header, Display, Patient Data, Localization, and Video Out.
- **Presets** with a list of available presets, default presets, and the possibility to manage them.
- **Measure & Calcs** for general measurement settings, assignment of calculation packages to presets, results, and preferences.
- **OB / Gyn** for preferred settings in these exam types.
- **Labeling** to assign new labels and bodymarks to presets, and to adjust the position of needle guides.
- **Configure Layout** to configure the button layout for exam type and imaging mode.
- **Store/Network** for storing and clip capture preferences, printer connections, DICOM/PACS connections, Wi-Fi, and network connection.
- **Security** for system administrators only. Select password protection and login/logout preferences. User manager window.
- **3D-4D**
- **Service** for import/export and restoring settings, system and transducer licenses, system information, and third party licenses.

You can navigate the windows by dragging the window with the trackball while holding down a selector key or by clicking on the dots at the bottom of the window.

# System Window

## Header Tab

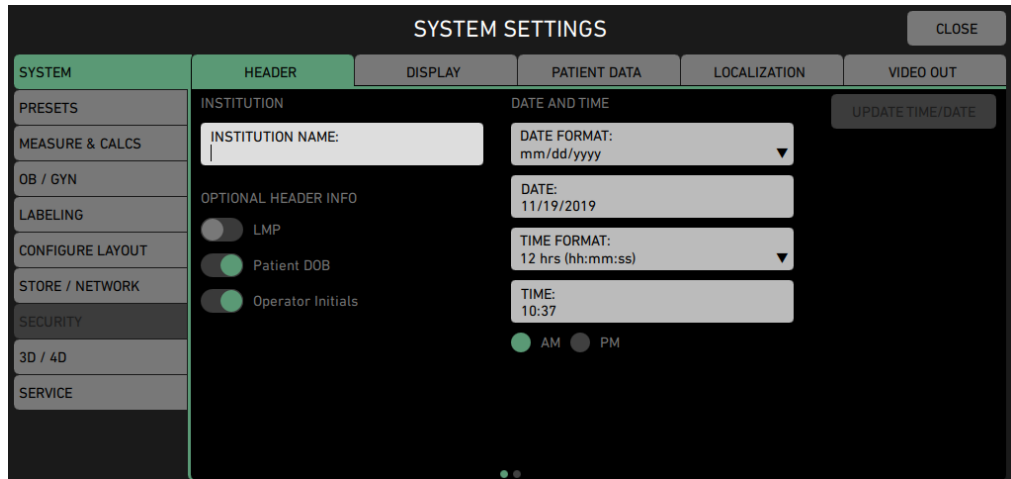


Figure C-2. System Header tab

Institution information is displayed above the transducer name at the top of the monitor and included in documents archived to a DICOM system. On the Header tab, you can:

- Type in your institution name.
- Select date format, date, and time format.
- Decide if you want to add **Optional Header Info**.
- Navigate to next window to add a logo for your institution.

## Display Tab

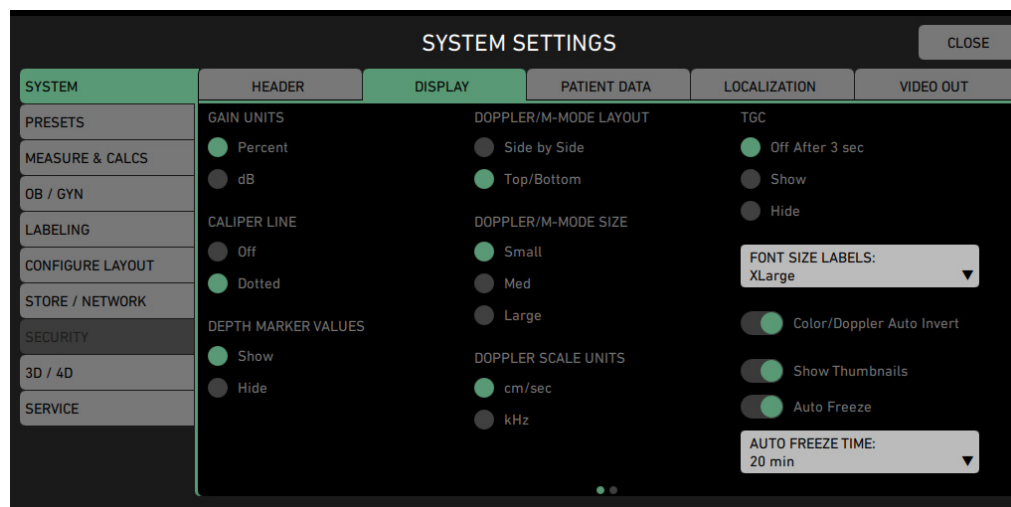


Figure C-3. System Display tab - first view

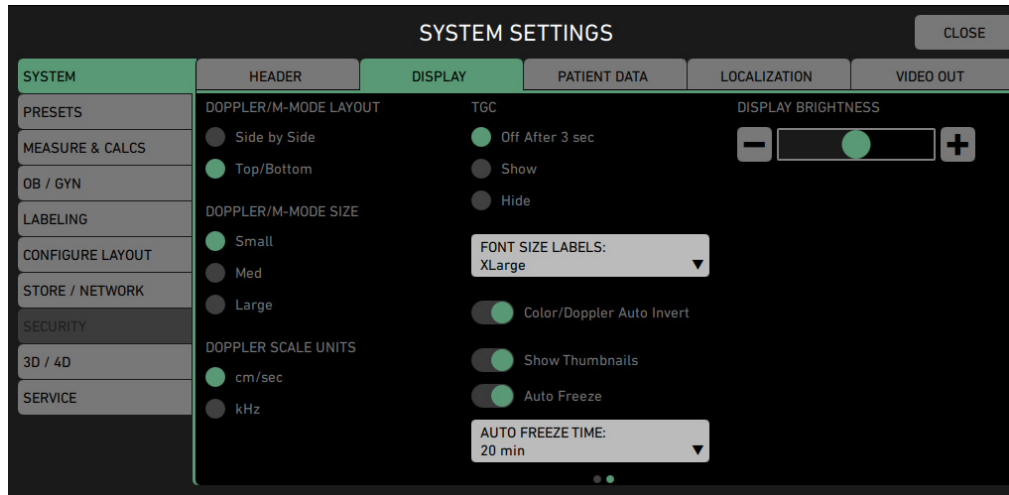


Figure C-4. System Display tab - next view

On the **Display** tab, there are several options for customizing your monitor. Use the radio buttons, slide buttons, and dropdown menus to adjust the system to your preferences. **Auto Freeze** activates or deactivates the screensaver. You can set the time before the screensaver is activated in **Auto Freeze Time**.

## Patient Data Tab

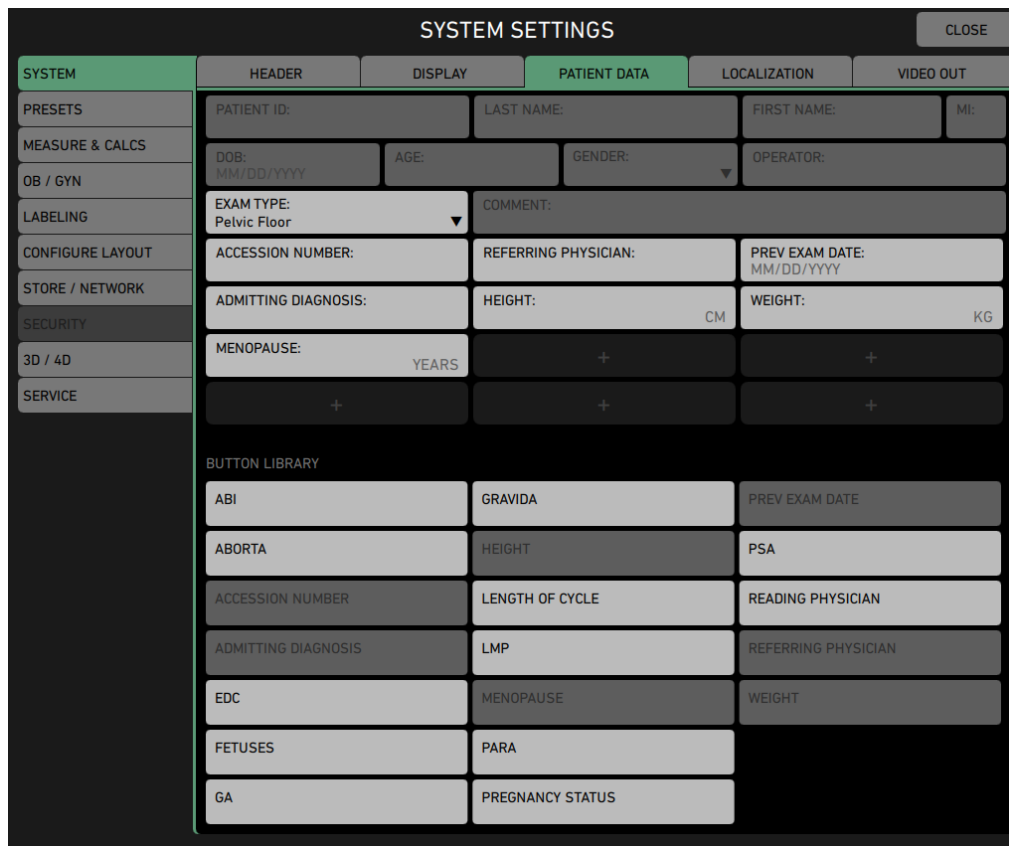


Figure C-5. System Patient Data tab

On the **Patient Data** tab, you can add more fields to the **Patient Details** window.

- 1 Add a field from the **Button Library** by dragging it to an empty field marked with a +.

The fields will be displayed next time you click the **Patient Details** window.

## Localization Tab

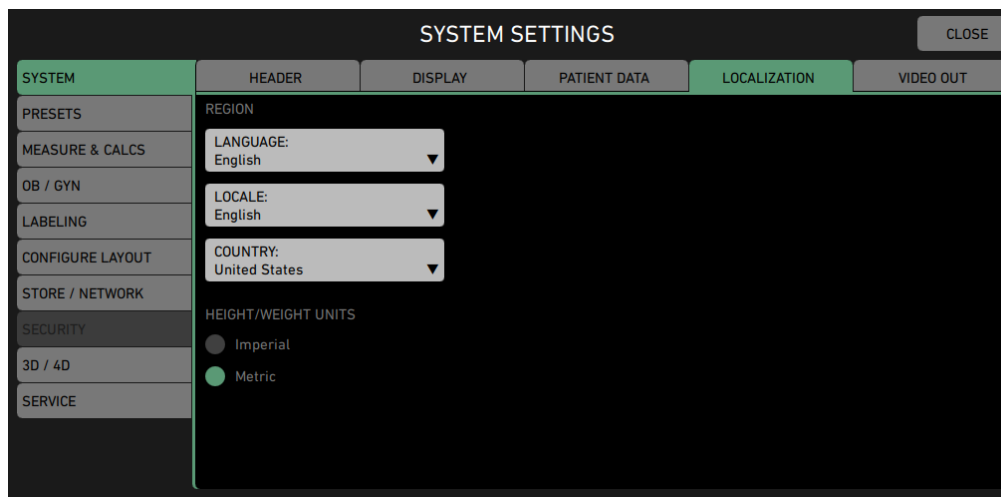


Figure C-6. System Localization tab

On the **Localization** tab, you can adjust language and location settings. Note that changes to these settings require a restart of the system to take effect.

## Video Out Tab

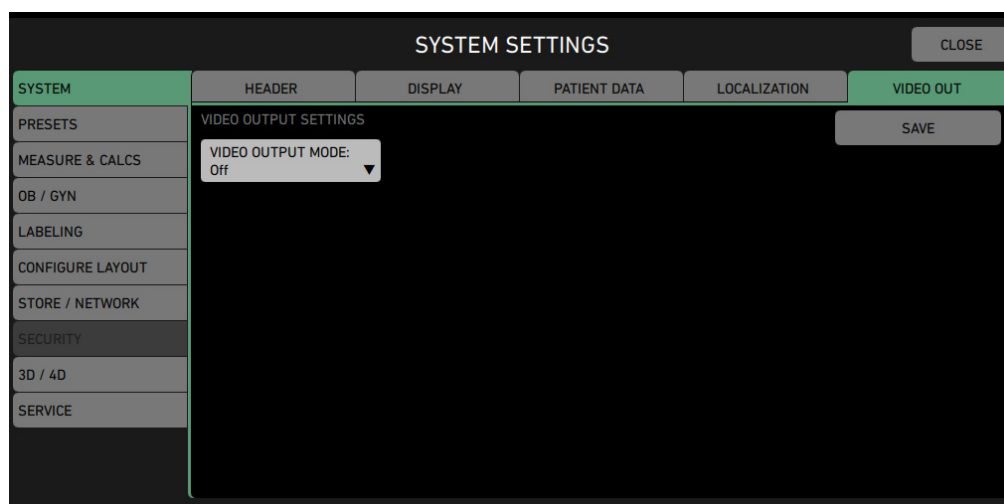


Figure C-7. System Video Out tab

On the **Video Out** tab, you can select **Video Output Settings**.

## Preset Window

### Available Tab

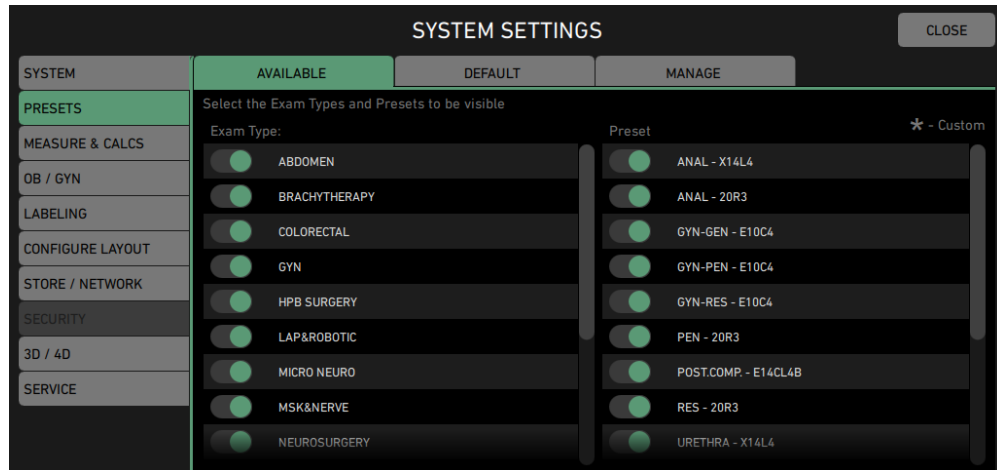


Figure C-8. Available presets

The **Available** tab shows the presets available for the selected **Exam Type**. Use the toggle buttons to select which **Exam Type** and **Presets** should be visible.

### Default Tab

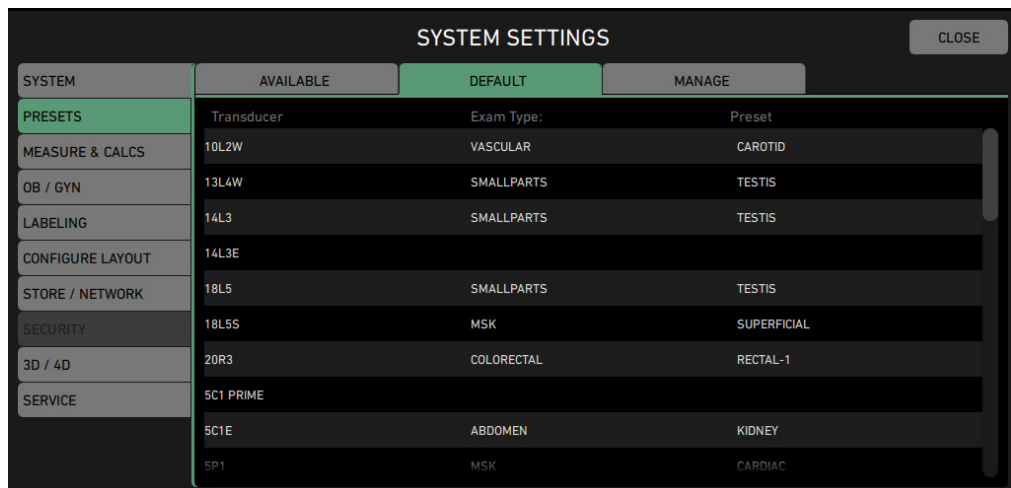


Figure C-9. Default presets

The **Default** tab shows the default presets available for the individual transducers.

#### To change a default preset:

- 1 Click on the transducer, exam type, or preset.  
A window appears for the transducer.
- 2 Select an exam type
- 3 Select the desired preset for the chosen transducer and exam type

#### 4 Click Save

### Manage Tab

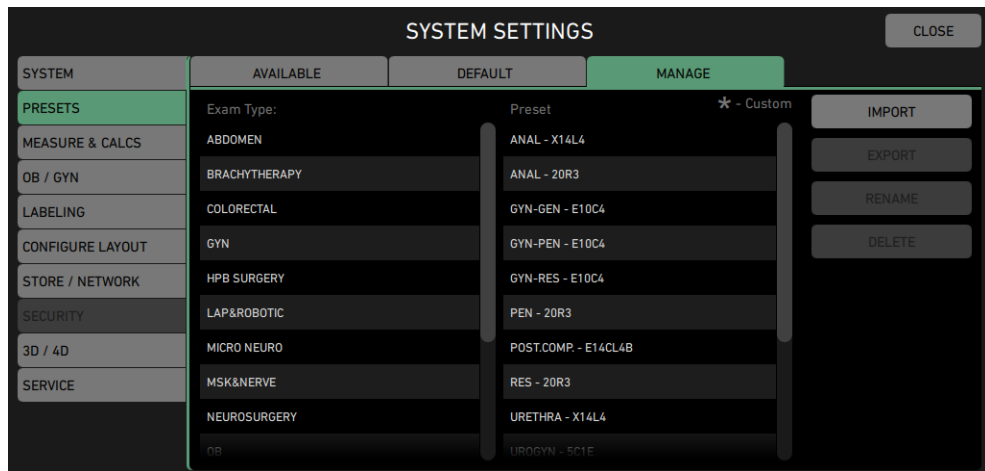


Figure C-10. Manage presets

On the **Manage** tab, you can import and export, rename, and delete presets.

### Measure & Calcs Window

#### General Tab

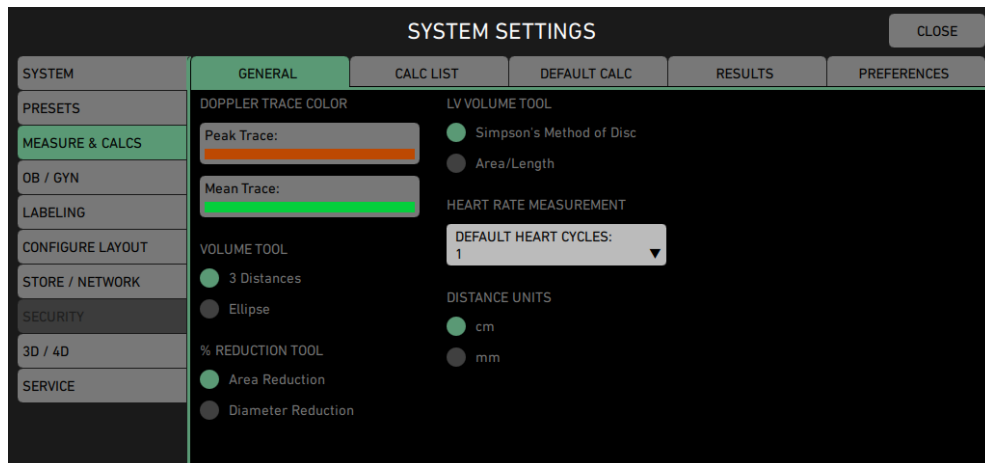


Figure C-11. Measure & Calcs General tab

On the **General** tab, you can:

- Select **Doppler Trace Color** scheme for Peak Trace and Mean Trace.
- Use the radio buttons to decide the behavior of the **Volume Tool**, the **%Reduction Tool**, the **LV Volume Tool**, and the **Distance Units**.
- Set **Default Heart Cycles** on the dropdown menu.

## Calc List Tab

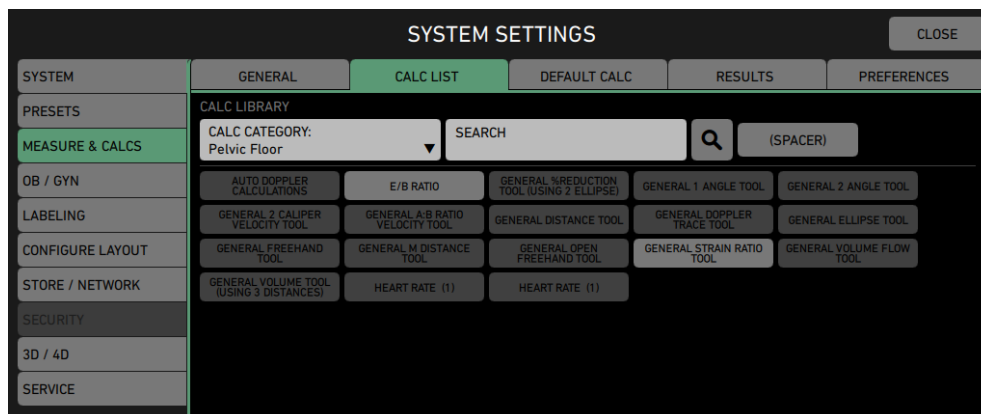


Figure C-12. Measures & Calcs, Calc list tab

On the **Calc List** tab, you can customize your selected calculation packages to fit your needs, and you can select a default calculation to start whenever you click **Freeze**.

### To add a calculation to this Calc. Package:

- 1 In **Calc Library**, select **Calc Category**.
- 2 Click the calculation you want to add. It will be added immediately to the right of the existing calculations. If the first page is already full, a new page will be added.
- 3 If you want to add space between the default calculations and the ones you are adding, click **(Spacer)**. This will result in an empty area on the screen, the size of which is dependent on how many spacers you add.

### To remove a calculation from this Calc. Package:

- 1 Click the calculation you want to remove. It will turn green, and the buttons **Remove from Package** and **Restore Default** will be active.
- 2 Click **Remove from Package**.

### To restore default calculations:

- Click **Restore Default**.

## Default Calc Tab

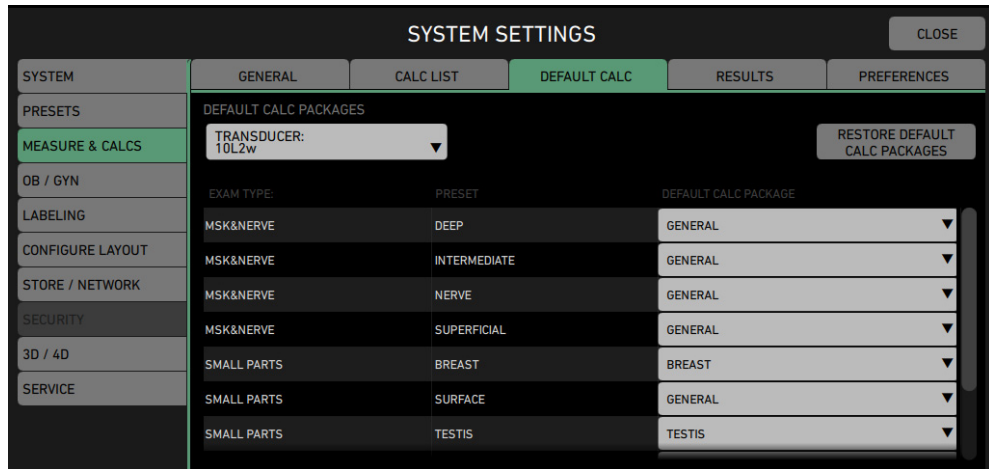


Figure C-13. Measure & Calcs, Default Calc tab

On the **Default Calc** tab, you can see the **Default Calc Packages** for the individual transducers, their exam types, and presets.

### To change Default Calc Package:

- 1 Select transducer on the dropdown menu.
- 2 Select **Exam Type** and **Preset**.
- 3 On the dropdown menu **Default Calc Package**, select the calculation package you want.

You can restore all defaults by clicking the **Restore Default Calc Packages** button.

## Results Tab

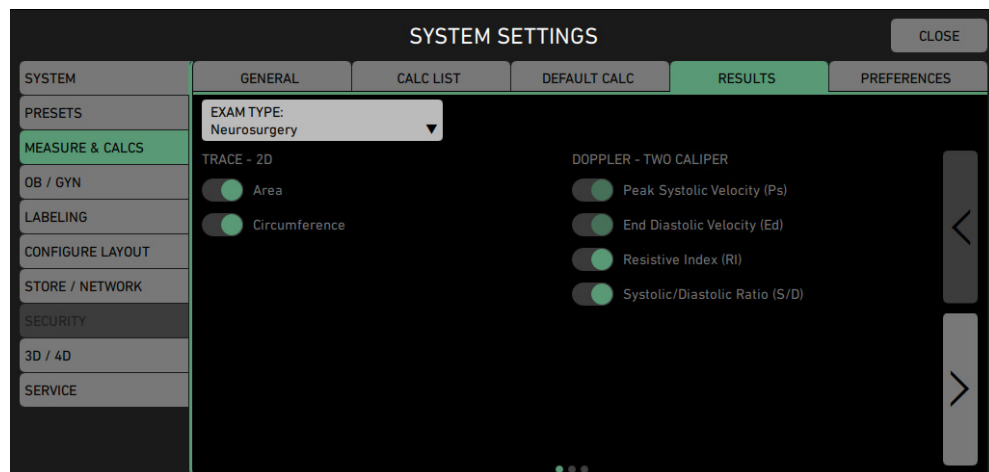


Figure C-14. Measure & Calcs. Results tab.



On the **Results** tab, you can select which results will be displayed when you do the different measurements. Note that you can only change the results when the toggle buttons are highlighted. Use the dropdown to select **Exam Type** and use the arrows on the tab to see all results.

## Preferences Tab

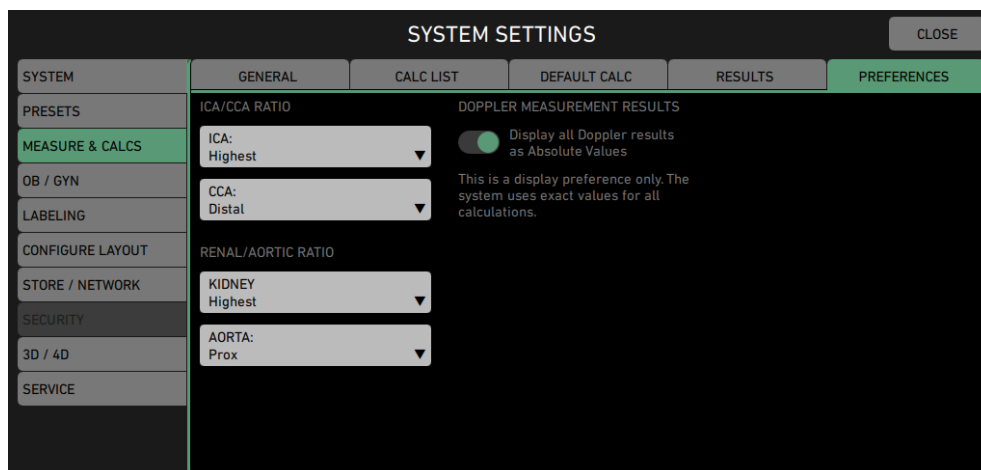


Figure C-15. The Measure & Calcs Preferences tab.

On the **Preferences** tab, you can use the dropdowns to select the **ICA/CCA Ratio**, **Renal/Aortic Ratio**, and decide if you want to see all Doppler results on the monitor in absolute values.

## OB/Gyn Window

### Preferences tab

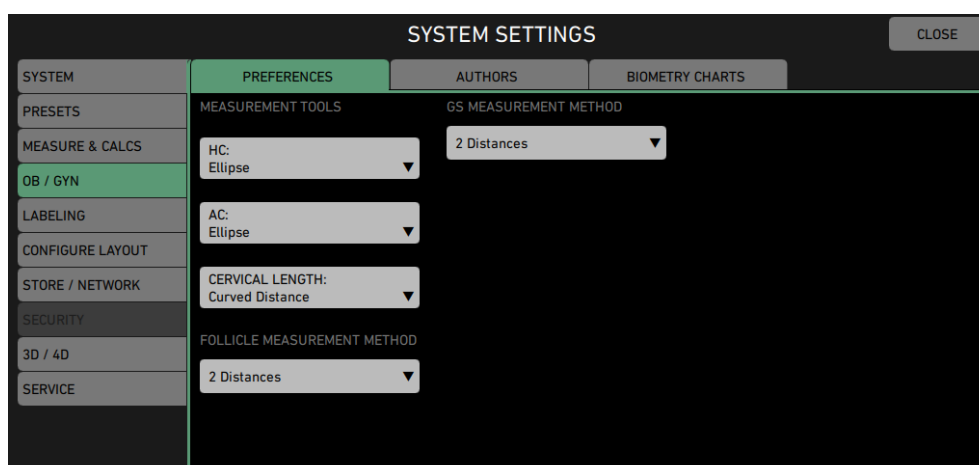


Figure C-16. The OB/GYN Preferences tab

On the **Preferences** tab, you can use the dropdowns to select your preferred **Measurement Tools** and decide which **Follicle** and **GS** measurement method you want to use.

## Authors tab

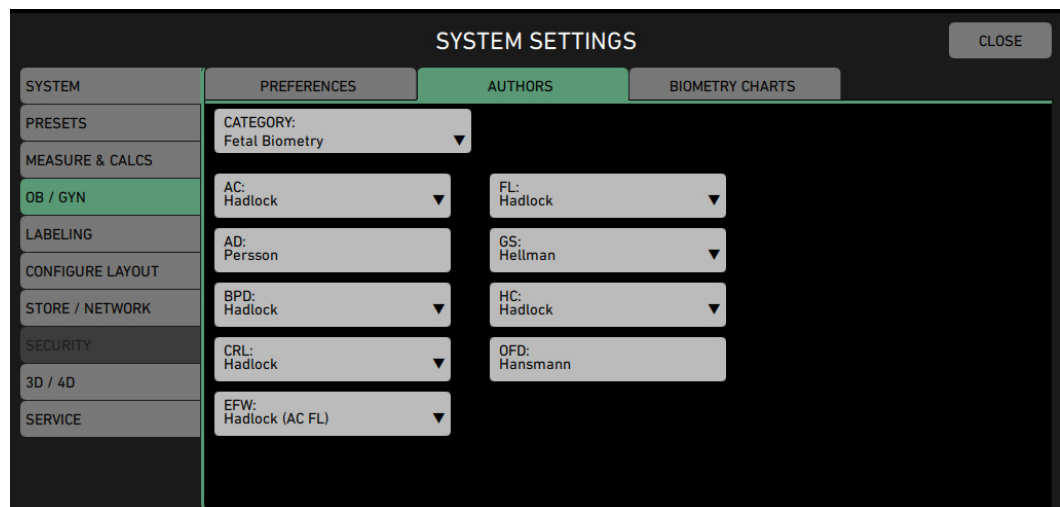


Figure C-17. The OB/GYN Authors tab

On the **Authors** tab, you can use the dropdowns to select between **Fetal Biometry** and **Growth Curves** under **Category**, and then decide which author you prefer for the calculations.

## Labeling Window

### Labels Tab

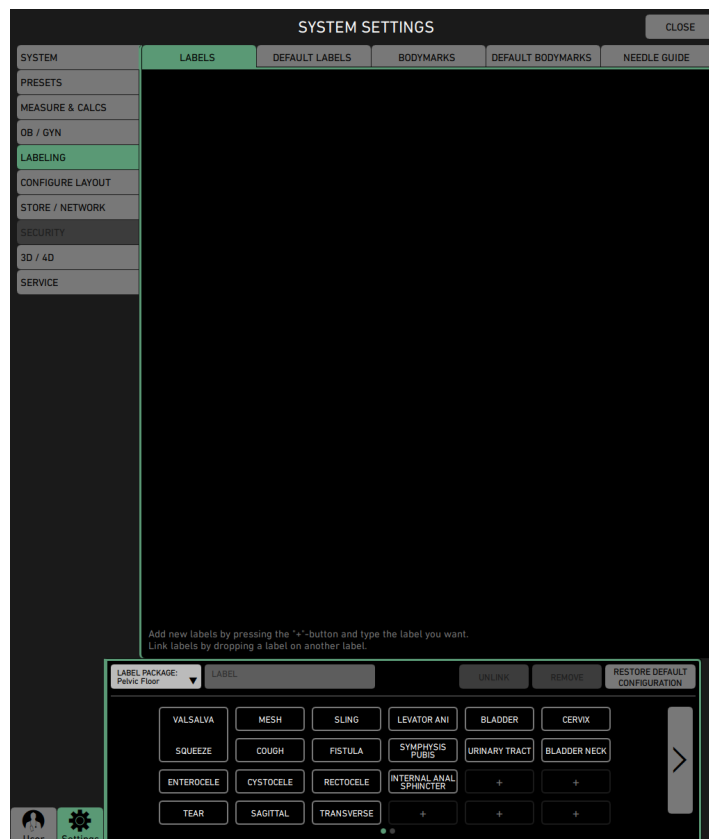


Figure C-18. The Labels tab.

On the **Labels** tab, you can do the following for each **Label Package**:

- Add your own labels. Navigate to the end of the custom labels, click + and type in the label using the keyboard.
- Link labels. Press and hold a button and drag onto another button. To remove the link, click **Unlink**.
- Remove labels you do not need. Click the label to highlight it and then click **Remove**.
- To restore factory defaults, click **Restore Factory Default**. You will be asked to confirm your choice.

## Default Labels Tab

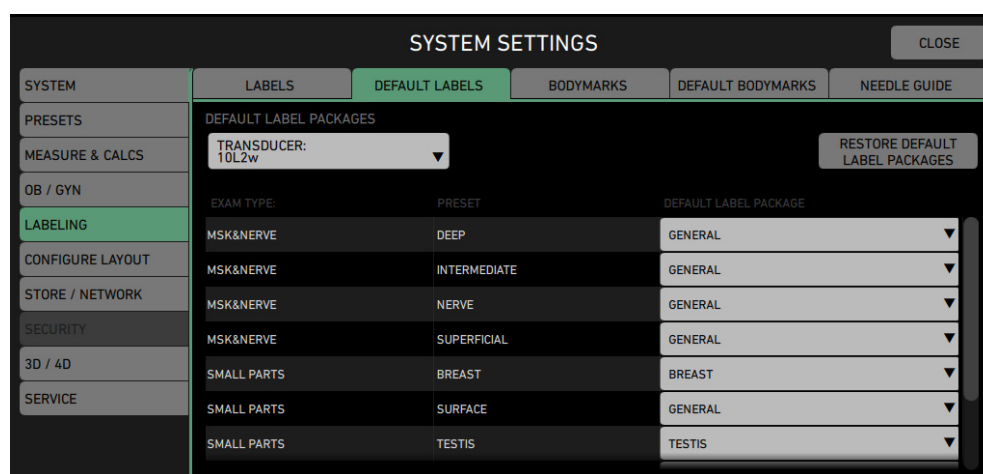


Figure C-19. The Labeling Default Labels tab.

On the **Default Labels** tab, you can see the **Default Label Packages** for the individual transducers, their exam types and presets.

### To change Default Label Package:

- 1 Select transducer on the dropdown menu.
- 2 Select **Exam Type** and **Preset**.
- 3 On the dropdown menu **Default Label Package**, select the label package you want.

You can restore all defaults by clicking the **Restore Default Label Packages** button.

## Bodymarks Tab

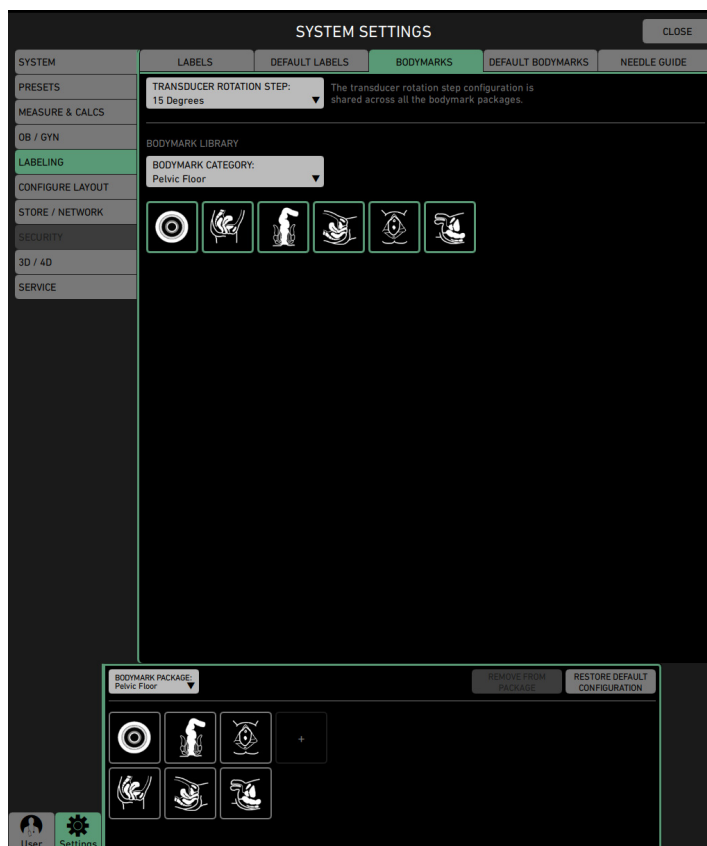


Figure C-20. The Labeling Bodymarks tab.

On the **Bodymarks** tab, you can do the following for each **Bodymark Package**:

- Decide the degree of rotation of the imaging plane indicator on the bodymark on the **Transducer Rotation Step** dropdown. See “Adjusting the Imaging Plane Indicator” on page 50.
- Add bodymarks from all categories, if you feel you need more than the default images in your **Bodymark Package**. Select a category in the **Bodymark Library**. Click on a bodymark in the **Bodymark Library** to add to the bodymark package selected in the window at the bottom of the monitor.
- Remove bodymarks you do not need. Select the bodymark and click **Remove from Package**.
- To restore default configurations, click **Restore Default Configuration**. You will be asked to confirm your choice.

## Default Bodymarks Tab

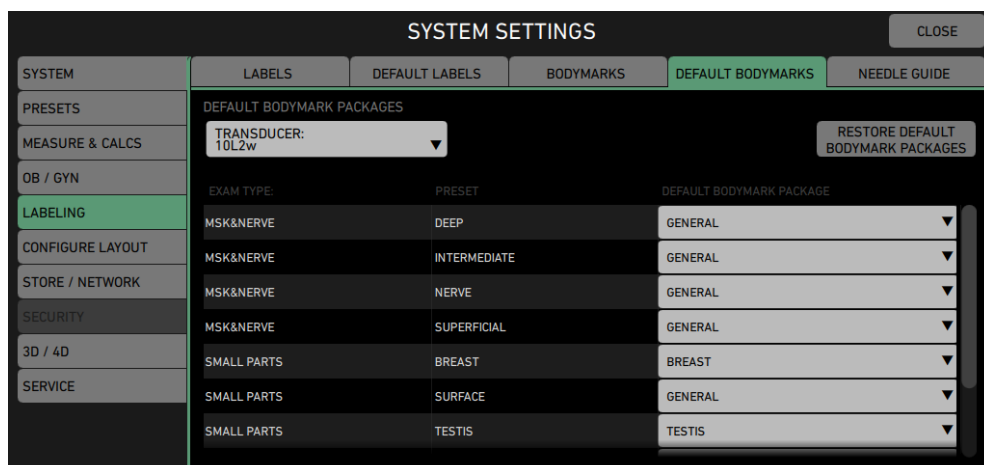


Figure C-21. The Labeling Default Bodymarks tab.

On the **Default Bodymarks** tab, you can see the **Default Bodymark Packages** for the individual transducers, their exam types, and presets.

### To change Default Bodymark Package:

- 1 Select transducer on the dropdown menu.
- 2 Select **Exam Type** and **Preset**.
- 3 On the dropdown menu **Default Bodymark Package**, select the bodymark package you want.

You can restore all defaults by clicking the **Restore Default Bodymark Packages** button.

## Needle Guide Tab

Clicking the **Open Needle Guide** button opens the **Needle Guide** window on the monitor.

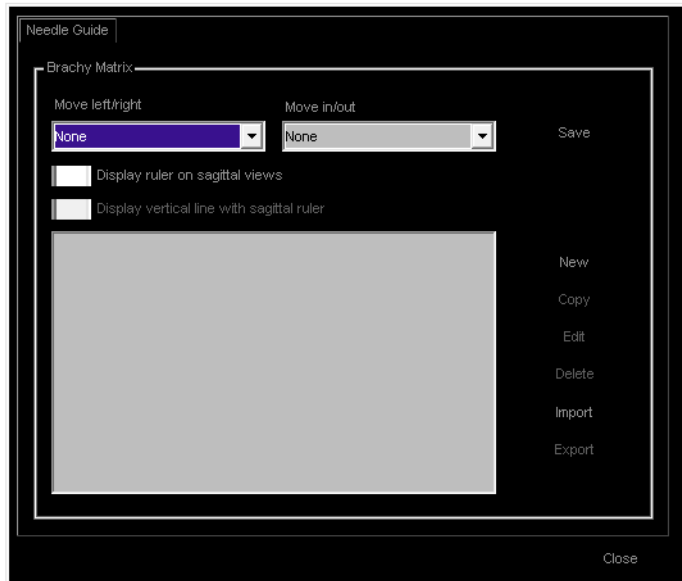


Figure C-22. Needle Guide window on monitor with Brachy Matrix setup.

In the **Brachy Matrix** setup window, you make setup changes to brachy matrices and needle guides. You can:

- Move a programmable brachy matrix or needle guide left, right, in, or out.
- Specify that a brachy ruler is displayed on a sagittal view (E14CL4b transducer)
- Define your own brachy matrix and ruler.

**To move the offset in either direction:**

- Select the offset you want from the dropdown menu and click **Save**.

Use the trackball and selector keys to navigate the Needle Guide window.

**To have a vertical line displayed at the 0 of the brachy ruler:**

- Check the **Display ruler on sagittal views** checkbox and click **Save**.

**User-Defined Matrices (including Brachy and Transperineal)**

User-defined matrices are listed in the lower part of the **Brachy Matrix Setup** window (Fig C-22).

You have the following options for user-defined matrices:

Option	What it does
<b>New</b>	Opens the User-Defined Matrix Wizard so you can define a new matrix.
<b>Copy</b>	Creates a new user-defined matrix as a copy of the currently selected matrix. The name of the new matrix is the name of the existing matrix plus an index number. You can then edit the copy to create a new user-defined matrix.
<b>Edit</b>	Opens the Measurement Definition Wizard so you can edit the selected user-defined brachy matrix.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the selected user-defined matrix. You are asked to confirm the deletion.
<b>Import</b>	Imports a matrix from an external storage device. If the system already has a matrix with the same name as the matrix you want to import, the imported matrix will be renamed to the matrix name plus an index number.
<b>Export</b>	Exports the selected matrices to an external storage device.

Table C-1. Options in the Brachy Matrix Setup window.

## Using the User-Defined Matrix Wizard

### To define a new matrix or edit an existing user-defined matrix:

- 1 In the **Brachy Matrix Setup** window, click **New**, or select an existing measurement and click **Edit**.

The following window appears:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "General Matrix Information". It contains two input fields: "Transducer Type" with a dropdown menu showing "E14CL4b" and "Matrix Name" with a text box containing "MyBrachyMatrix". Below the fields are three buttons: "< Back", "Next >", and "Cancel".

- 2 Select the transducer that the matrix will be used with, and name the matrix. click **Next**.

Transverse Matrix - Dimensions

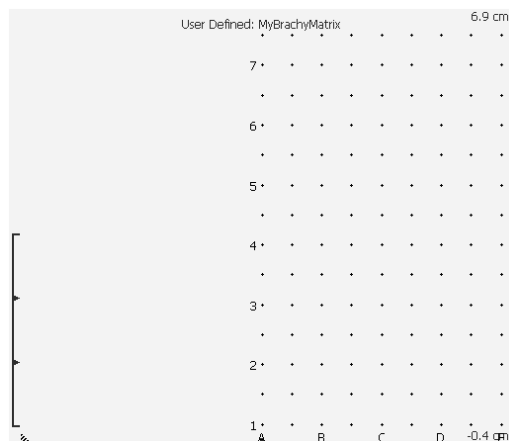
Width in mm	Horizontal holes/cm	Horizontal offset in mm
70	2	0
Height in mm	Vertical holes/cm	Vertical offset in mm
70	2	0

Columns: 15  
 Rows: 15  
 Column spacing: 5.00 mm  
 Row spacing: 5.00 mm

< Back    Next >    Cancel

- 3** Enter the width and height of the matrix, the horizontal and vertical spacing between holes (holes per cm), and the horizontal and vertical offset of the matrix.

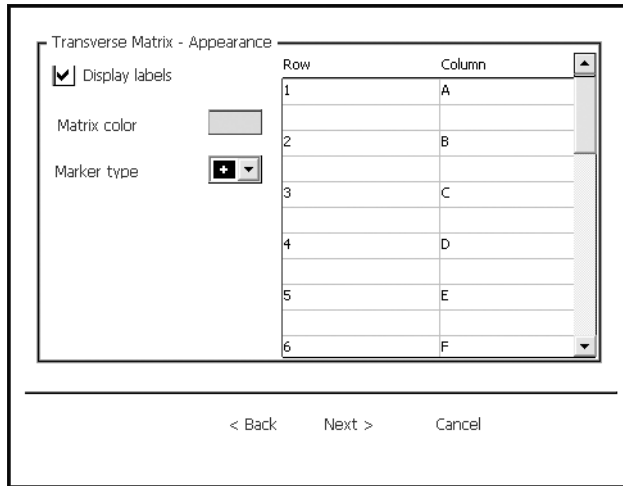
The system calculates the number of rows and columns and the hole spacing in each direction. Click **OK** when cautions about this appear on the monitor. When the both offsets are 0, the matrix looks like this:



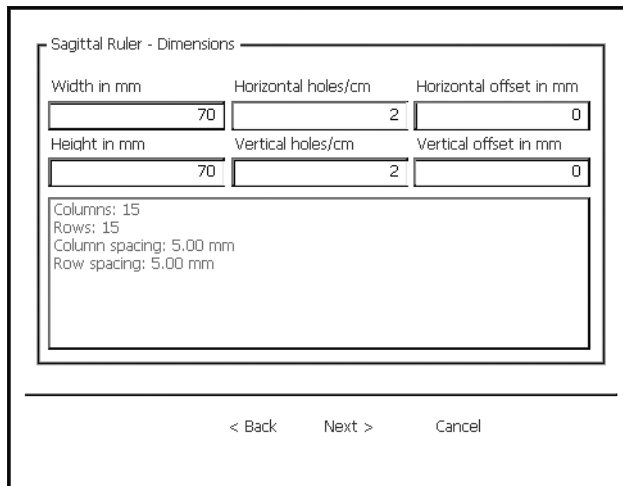
Assuming that the transducer is at the bottom of the image, positive offsets move the matrix to the right or up, negative offsets move it to the left or down.

- 4** Click **Next**.

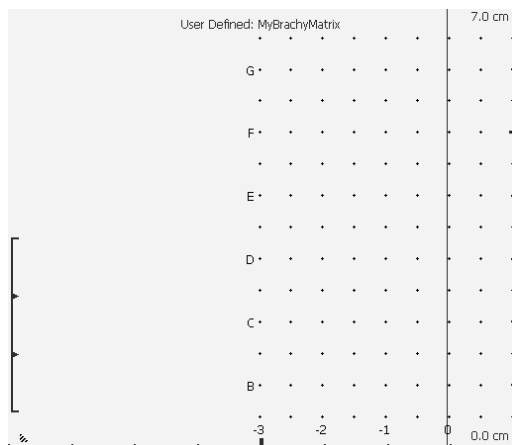




- 5 Select the symbols (**Marker type**) and color (click the box) that will be used for the matrix. If you check **Display labels**, you can enter names for the rows and columns. click **Next**.

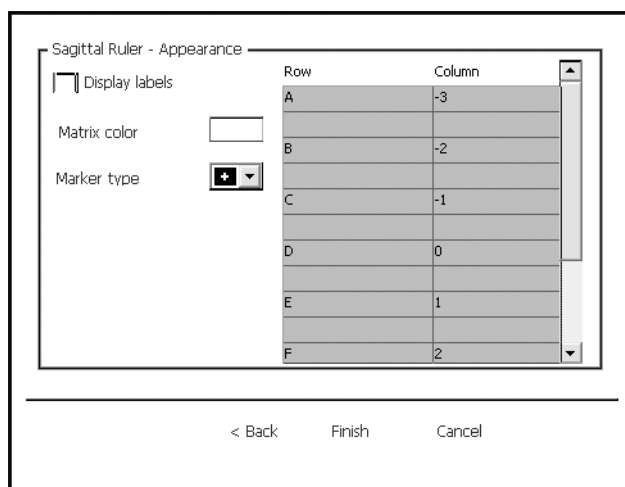


- 6 Enter the width and height of the ruler, the horizontal and vertical spacing between markers (holes/cm) and the horizontal and vertical offset of the ruler. The system calculates the number of rows and columns and the hole spacing in each direction. When the both offsets are 0, the matrix looks like this:



Assuming that the transducer is at the bottom of the image, positive offsets move the matrix to the right or up, negative offsets move it to the left or down.

click **Next**.



- 7 Select the symbols (**Marker type**) and color (click the box) that will be used for the ruler. If you check **Display labels**, you can enter names for the rows and columns.

**NOTE:** If you want to be able to have a vertical line displayed at the 0 of the brachy ruler (see page 270), you must name one of the columns "0".

- 8 Click **Finish**.

**NOTE:** You must disconnect and reconnect the transducer for the changes to take effect.

## Matrix Alignment and Calibration

**NOTE:** The best accuracy that can be expected is a 3mm deviation.

Check the alignment of a reusable needle guide or transperineal biopsy matrix if you have any reason to suspect that it has been damaged. BK Medical recommends that you check them once a month, or more often in case of heavy use.

### To check the alignment of puncture guides and matrices:

- 1 Fill a suitable tank with saline. The concentration of the saline depends on the room temperature. It should be 4% NaCl at 25°C (77°F) and 5% NaCl at 20°C (68°F).
- 2 Assemble the needle guide (or brachy stepper and grid) and attach it to the transducer.
- 3 Turn on the system and connect the transducer.
- 4 Immerse the transducer tip in the saline.
- 5 Start imaging to produce an image on the monitor.
- 6 Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard to superimpose the puncture line or matrix on the monitor image.
- 7 Insert a needle through the puncture guide or grid.

- 8 Watch the image of the needle tip and measure its deviation from the puncture line or matrix point shown on the monitor.
- 9 Decide whether the accuracy is acceptable.
- 10 If the accuracy is not acceptable, contact your BK Medical service representative.

**To calibrate programmable matrices:**

- 1 Fill a suitable tank with saline. The concentration of the saline depends on the room temperature. It should be 4% NaCl at 25°C (77°F) and 5% NaCl at 20°C (68°F).
- 2 Turn on the system and connect the transducer.
- 3 Make sure that the correct transducer type number is displayed the top of the monitor, followed by **T**, indicating that you are imaging in the transverse plane.
- 4 Press the **Biopsy** key on the keyboard to superimpose the matrix on the monitor image.
- 5 Click **Needle Guide** on the monitor.  
The list of needle guides appears.
- 6 click the matrix you want to calibrate.
- 7 Mount the transducer in the holder, by twisting the probe in, and put the transducer pin in the slot on the holder.
- 8 Then put the transducer (mounted in the holder, and with the grid attached) into the saline, making sure that the transducer arrays are fully immersed.
- 9 Verify that there is a image on the monitor, and that the image isn't frozen.
- 10 Insert a needle through hole D4 in the grid.  
The needle echo appears on the monitor.  
If the echo is superimposed on the dot in the matrix on the monitor, then insert a needle through B4 and F4. If the echo for the needles in these holes are also in the correct position, no further adjustment is required.
- 11 If the needle echo is not in the correct position relative to the matrix on the monitor, open **Settings**. Click **Labeling** and select **Needle Guide**.
- 12 Click the **Needle Guide** button to open the **Needle Guide** window on the monitor.
- 13 Here you will be able to move the template to the right or to the left, and in and out. (In = closer to the transducer/down on the monitor; Out = farther from the transducer/up on the monitor.)
- 14 Whenever you make changes to the matrix, remember to save your settings. Then repeat the process from step 10 to verify that the needle echo is superimposed on the correct dot in the matrix.
- 15 It may be necessary to adjust the stepper as well. Consult the stepper user guide for instructions. After you adjust the stepper, use the earlier steps in this procedure to verify that the matrix is calibrated properly.

## Configure Layout Window



Figure C-23. Configure Layout window.

The **Configure Layout** window lets you configure the buttons for each **Exam Type** and mode according to your needs and preferences.

### To add buttons in the parameter area, do as follows:

- 1 Select **Exam Type** on the dropdown, and mode below.
- 2 Drag the buttons you want from the **Controls Library** to the empty buttons (marked with a +) in the parameter area.

The fields will be displayed next time you click the Exam Type/mode you have configured.

### To remove buttons from the parameter area:

- Drag the buttons to the **Controls Library**.

### To restore default configuration:

- Click **Restore Default Configuration**. You will be asked to confirm your choice.

## Store/Network Window

### Store/Clip Tab

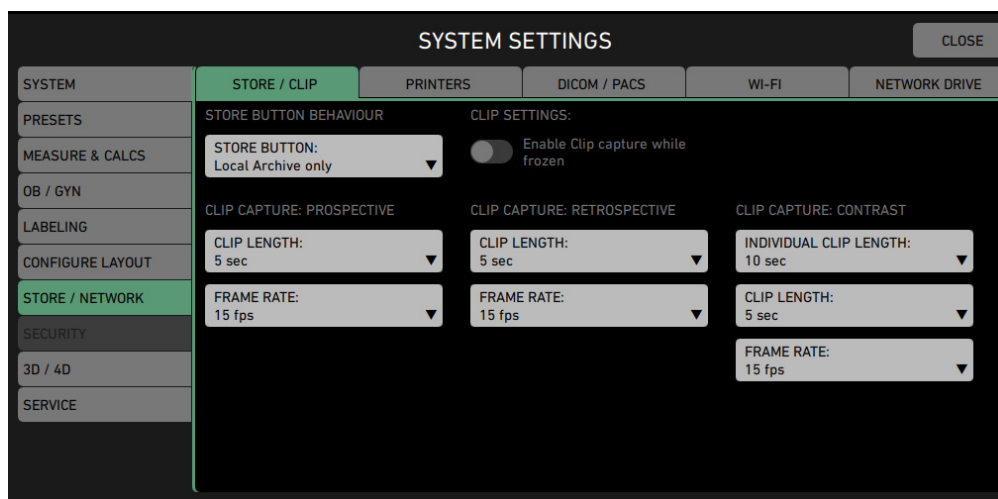


Figure C-24. Store/Clip tab.

On the **Store/Clip** tab, you can select where the images are stored and the clip length and frame rate of prospective and retrospective clips.

Use the **Store Button** dropdown to select where to store images. When storing to the **Local Archive**, you can see all data in the **Patient List**.

In **Clip Settings**, select if you want clip capture to be active when the image is frozen. This is valid for retrospective clips only.

Use the **Clip Length** and **Frame Rate** dropdowns to select these values for prospective captures (recording) or retrospective captures (capturing video clips based on the most recent cine loop).

Use the **Individual Clip Length**, **Clip Length**, and **Frame Rate** dropdowns to select these values for contrast captures.

## Printers Tab

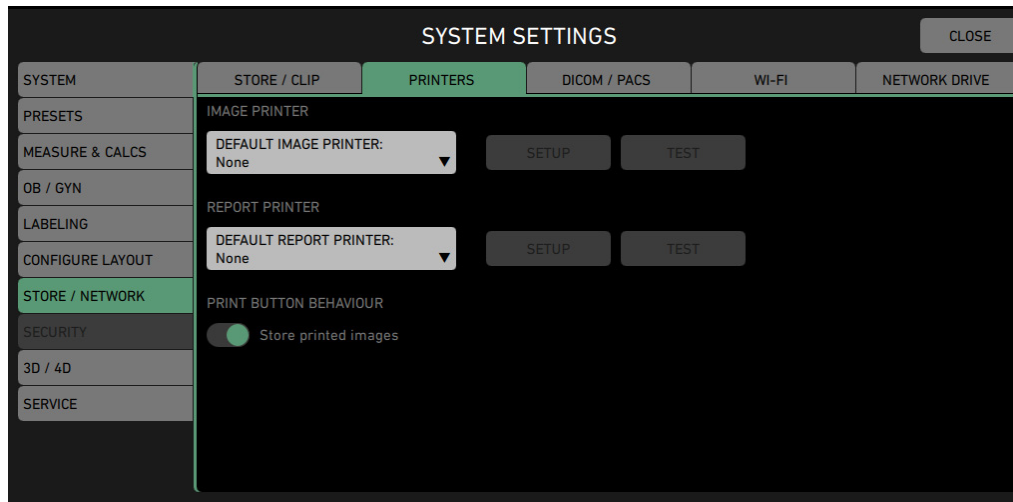


Figure C-25. Printers tab.

On the **Printers** tab, you can select and set up default printers. Use the dropdowns and the **Setup** and **Test** buttons to set up your printer.

### To set up the Report Printer:

- 1 Select one of the 3 generic printer drivers and click **Setup**. The **HP Universal Printing PS** window is displayed on the monitor.

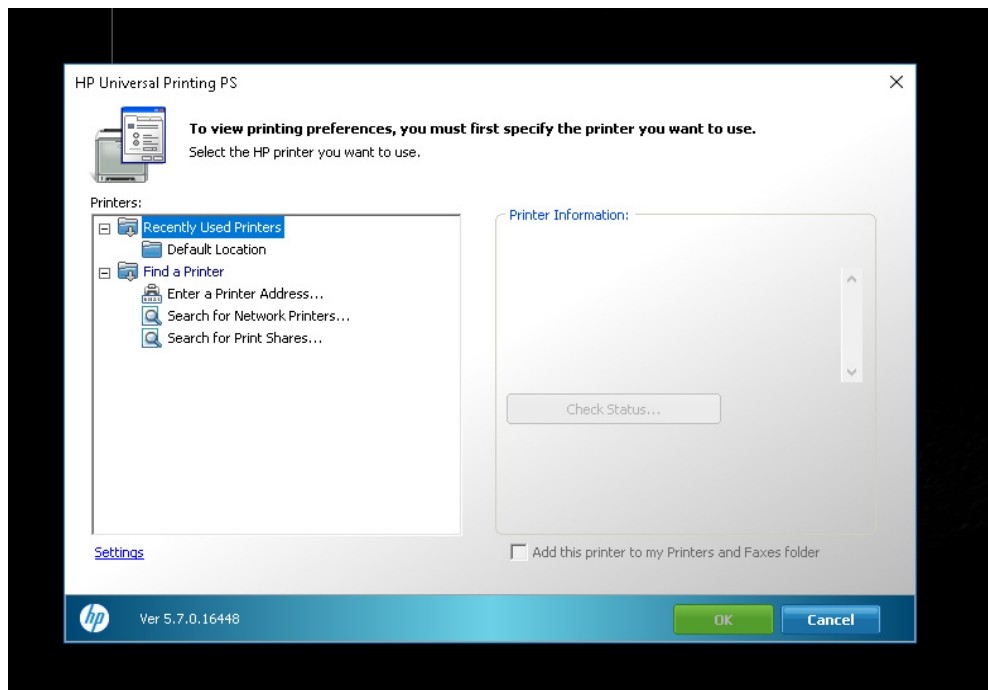


Figure C-26. The Printer Setup window

- 2 Under **Find a Printer**, use the trackball and selector keys select **Enter a Printer Address** and type in the IP address of the printer, or
- 3 Click **Search for Network Printers** to connect to your preferred printer.

Use the toggle button to decide **Print Button Behavior**.

## DICOM/PACS Tab

DICOM is not installed on the bk3000 or bk5000 as a default. You must purchase a DICOM license from BK Medical before a qualified service technician can install DICOM on your system. The *bk3000 Service Manual* and *bk5000 Service Manual* contain instructions for service personnel to use when setting up your DICOM system.

If DICOM is enabled on your system, various DICOM setup windows can be accessed by clicking the **DICOM** tab.

**NOTE:** *Changing the DICOM setup can cause your system not to work properly. For example, you may be unable to print to a DICOM printer. All changes to the DICOM setup should be made by qualified service personnel only*

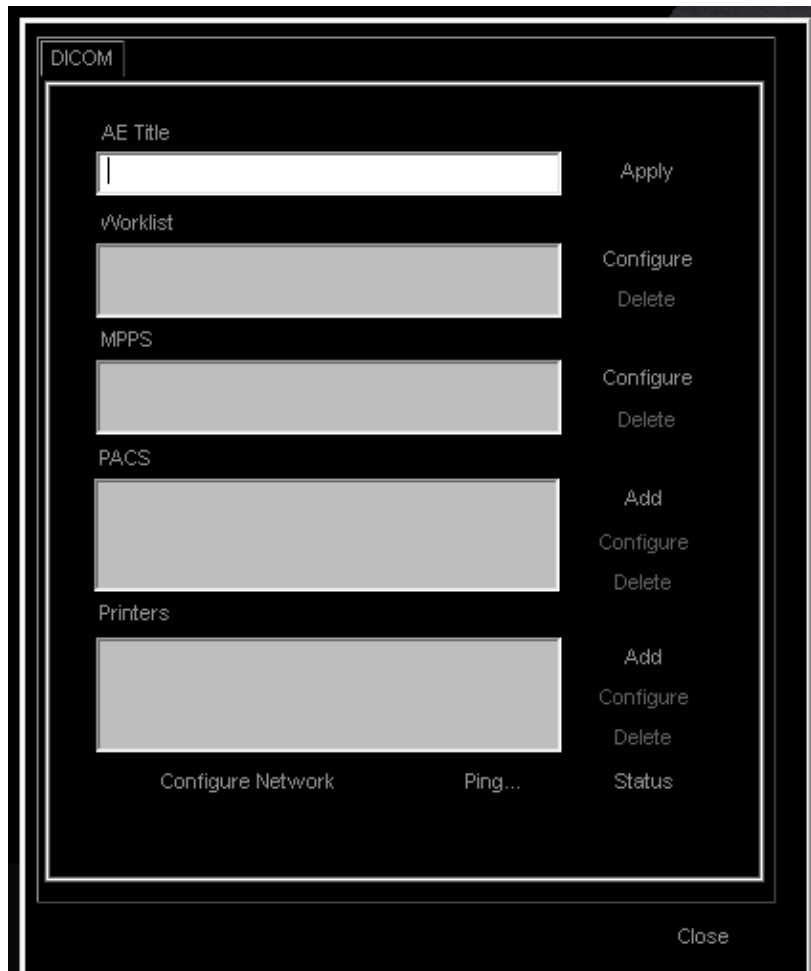


Figure C-27. DICOM window on monitor

You can open the **DICOM Status Window** by clicking **Status**.

## Wi-Fi Tab

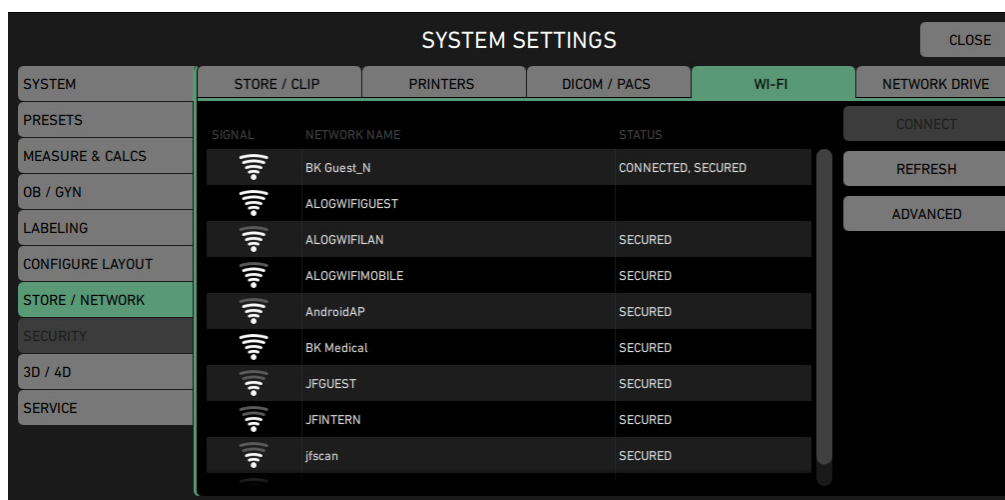


Figure C-28. Wi-Fi tab.

Do as follows to connect to a Wi-Fi network:

- Choose the appropriate network and click **Connect**. If you cannot find your network on the **Wi-Fi** tab, click **Refresh**.
- Type in the password and wait for the system to connect.
- For more Wi-Fi configurations, click **Advanced**. This option is protected by a password.

See also the section on **Wireless Networks** in the *bk3000 & bk5000 User Guide*.

## Network Drive

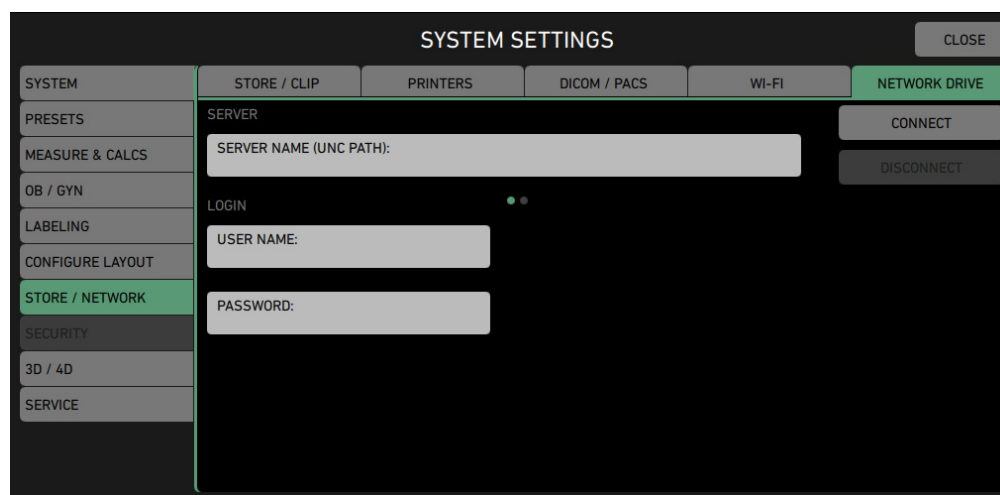


Figure C-29. Store/Network - Network Drive tab

To connect to a network drive, type in the name of your server. Then log in to the server with your user name and password and click **Connect**.

The *bk3000 Service Manual* and the *bk5000 Service Manual* contain instructions for service personnel to use when setting up your network drive.



## Security Window

This window is only available to system administrators.

### General Tab

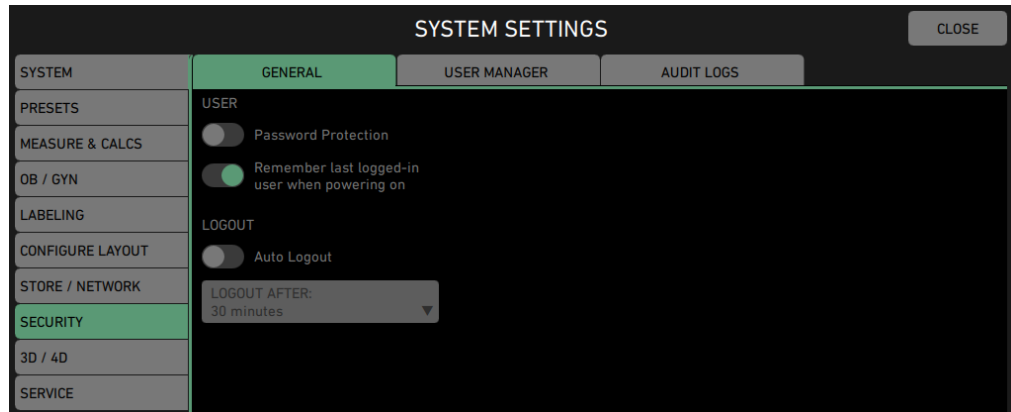


Figure C-30. Security - General tab.

On the **General** tab, you can select if the system must be password-protected, if the system should remember the last logged-in user when starting up, and if the user should be logged out automatically after a specified period.

### User Manager Tab

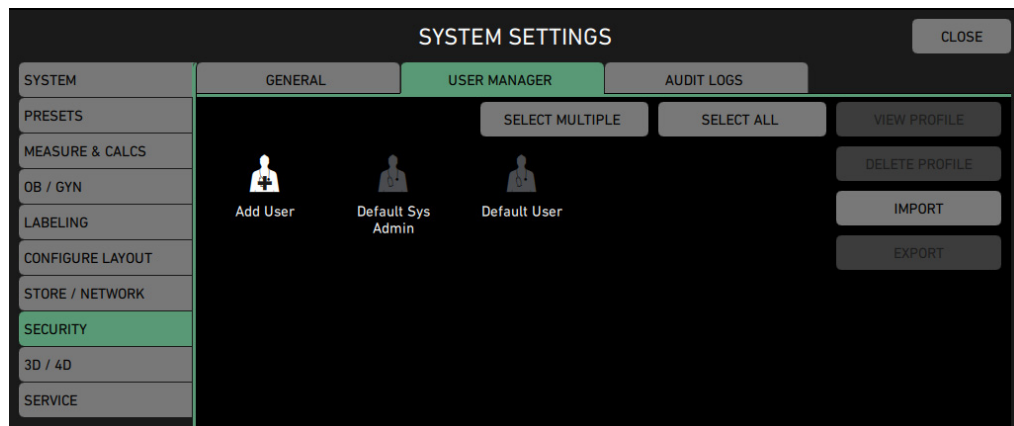


Figure C-31. Security - User Manager tab.

On the **User Manager** tab, you can create and administer users.

#### To create users:

- 1 Click the **Add User** icon to add one or several users.
- 2 If relevant, apply the user profile settings of another user from the dropdown menu.
- 3 Fill in all of the columns to identify each user.
- 4 Use the toggle button to select if the users should be allowed to modify their own profiles.
- 5 Click **Next**

- 6 Click **Add** to create the users.

For each individual user, you must view and edit the profile in order to select specific settings for this user.

## View Profile

### To view and edit user profile:

- 1 Select user and click **View Profile**.
- 2 In the **General** view, add or replace user photo.
- 3 Click the toggle button to select if **Password required during login** should be activated.
- 4 If a password is required, type in the password according to the instructions on the screen.
- 5 Use the radio buttons to select if the user should have a **Regular Profile** or be a **System Administrator**.
- 6 Click the toggle button to select if the user should be able to modify the profile. This does not allow the user to change a regular profile into a system administrator.

### To edit User Preferences:

- In the **View Profile** window, click **Preferences**.

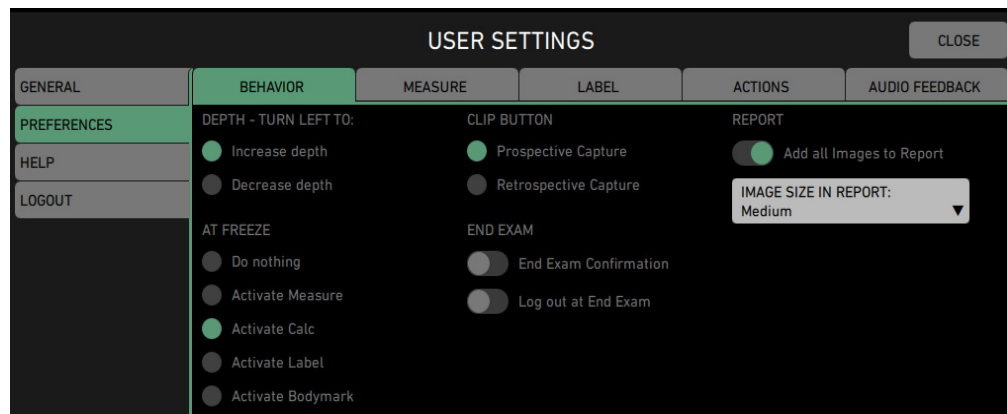


Figure C-32. User Preferences, Behavior tab

On the **Behavior** tab, you can:

- Select sliding direction on the **Depth** bar.
- Select system reaction **At Freeze**.
- Decide if the **Clip Button** should record a prospective or retrospective video clip.
- Decide if the user should receive a confirmation or be logged out at the end of the exam.
- Select if all images from the current exam should automatically be added to the **Report**, and select default size of these images.

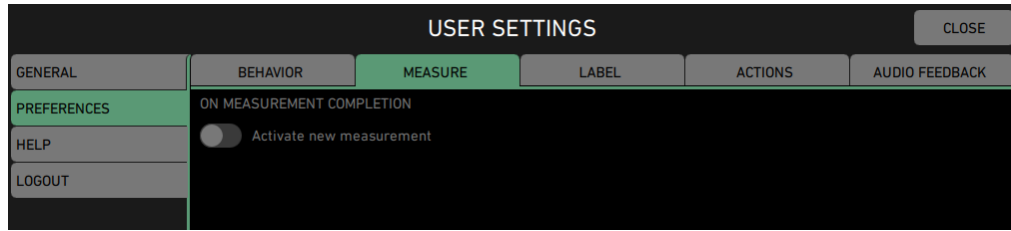


Figure C-33. User Preferences, Measure tab.

On the **Measure** tab, you can:

- Decide how the system should react on measurement completion.

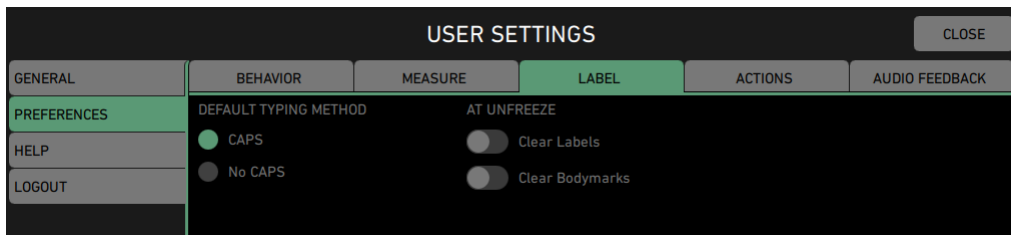


Figure C-34. User Preferences, Label tab.

On the **Label** tab, you can:

- Decide whether typed-in labels should appear in **Caps** or not.
- Select if labels or bodymarks should be cleared at Unfreeze.

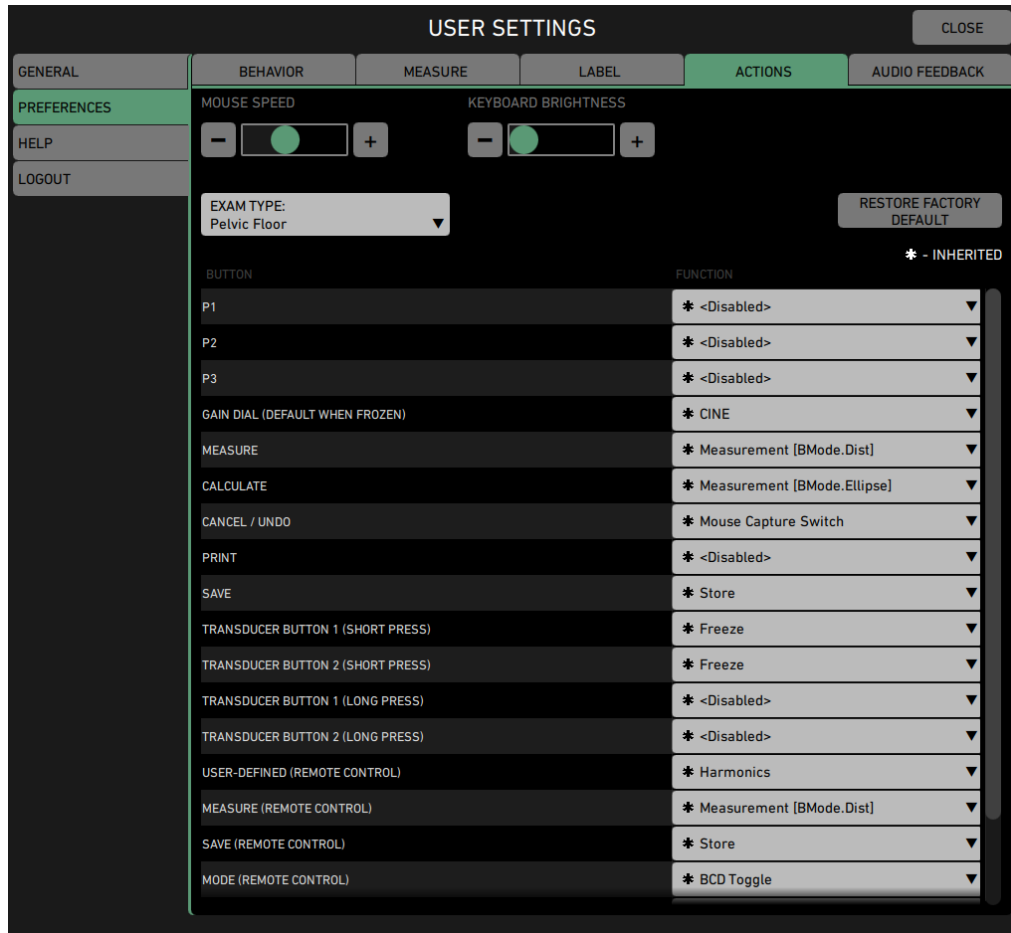


Figure C-35. User Preferences, Actions tab.

On the **Actions** tab, you can:

- Set the **Keyboard Brightness**.
- Select **Mouse Speed**.
- Select functions for buttons on the dropdown menus.

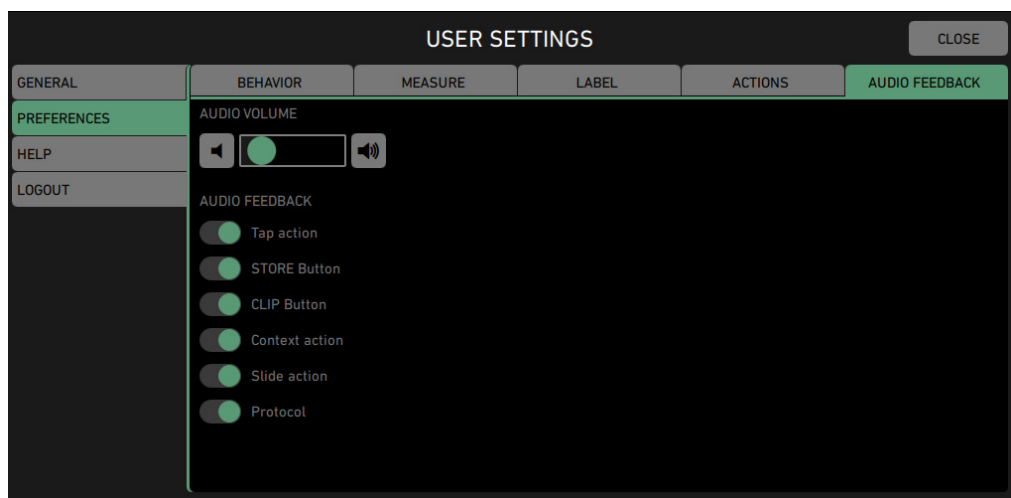


Figure C-36. User Preferences, Audio Feedback tab

On the Audio Feedback tab, you can:

- Adjust **Audio Volume**.
- Select or deselect actions, buttons, and protocol for Audio Feedback.

Click **Close** to exit **User Preferences**.

## Audit Logs

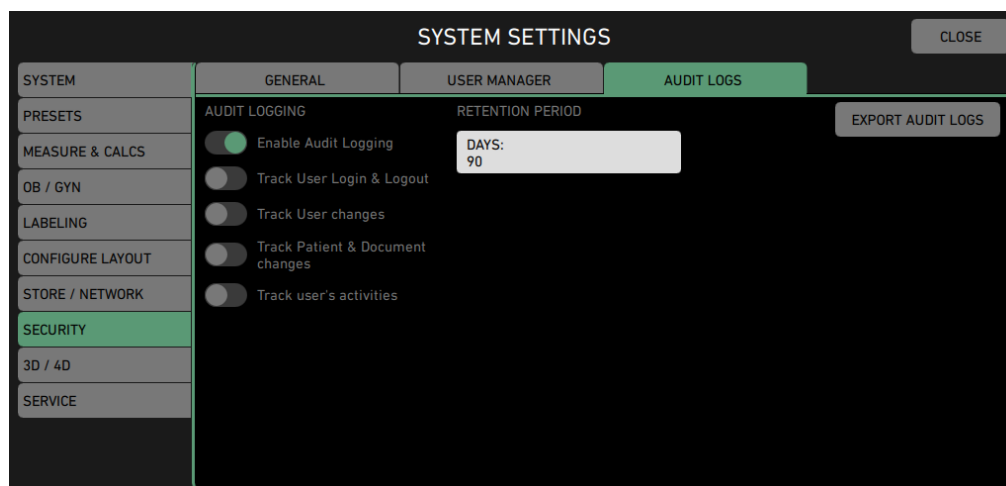


Figure C-37. Security window, Audit Logs.

**Audit Logs** will provide a log of basic operations on the system.

On the **Audit Logs** tab, you can:

- **Enable Audit Logging** or decide not to log.
- **Track User Login & Logout** to see how many different users are using the system.
- **Track User Changes** to see what changes users make to preferences and setup.
- **Track Patient & Document Changes** to see changes to the patient data.
- **Track User's Activities** to see which primary functions the user has performed in the exam.
- Decide retention period for the data
- To export the audit logs, click **Export Audit Logs**.

## 3D/4D

On the **3D/4D General** tab, you can decide whether the system will select the 3D region of interest marker automatically or not.

## Service Window

### General Tab

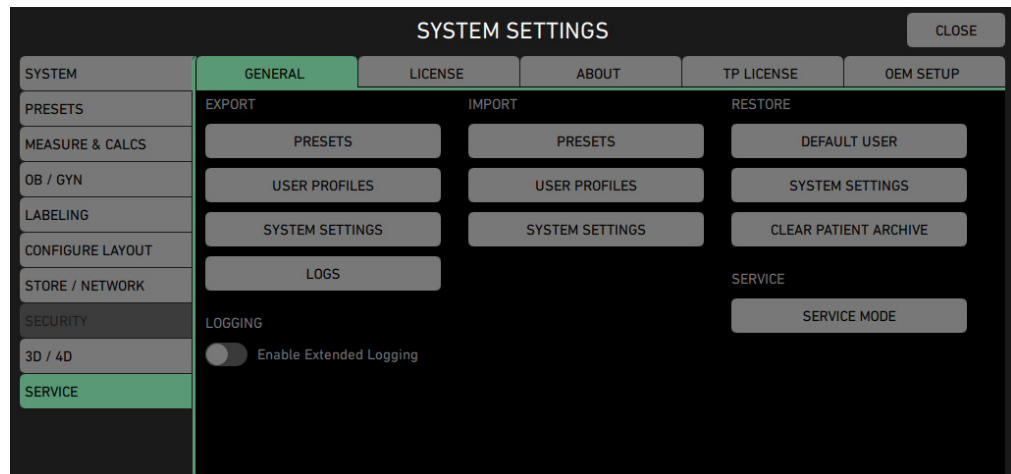


Figure C-38. Service General tab.

On the **General** tab, you can select **Enable Extended Logging**. You can also export and import **Presets**, **User Profiles**, and **System Settings**, and export **Logs**. And you can restore the **Default User**, **System Settings**, and **Clear Patient Archive**.

Access **Service Mode** by clicking the button. This mode is password protected.

### License Tab

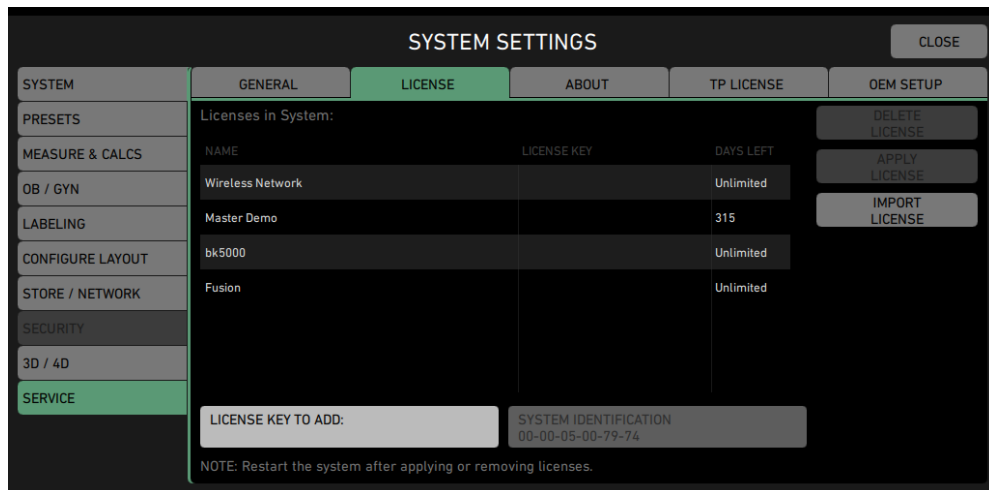


Figure C-39. The Service License tab.

On the **License** tab, you add, delete, and import licenses.

To add a license:

- 1 Type in the license in the **License key to add** field.
- 2 Click **Apply License**.
- 3 Restart the system to activate the license.

To delete a license:

- Select the license you want to delete and click **Delete License**.

You must restart the system after any changes to the licenses in order for the changes to take effect.

## About Tab

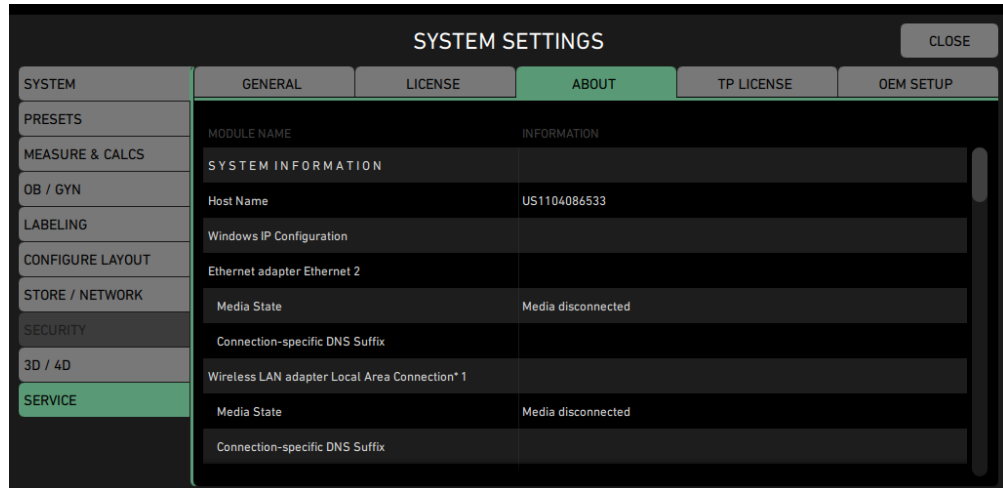


Figure C-40. Service About tab.

On the **About** tab, you will find information about e.g. the version of the installed software, which will be useful if you need service for the system.

## TP Licenses Tab

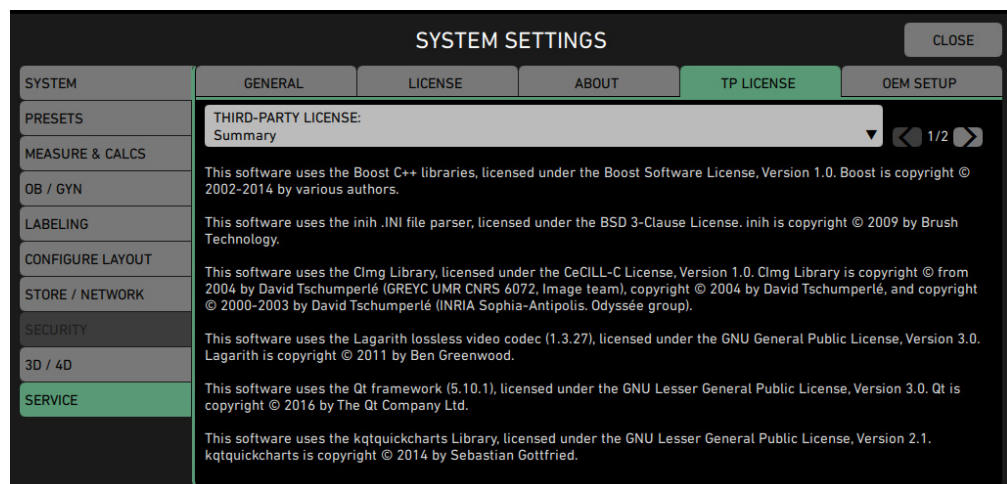


Figure C-41. Service - TP Licenses tab.

On the **TP Licenses** tab, you can see which third party licenses are used for the system installation.

## OEM setup

This functionality is only available for service personnel and is protected by a password.



# Index

---

## Numerics

- 2D filter 221
- 2D images, saving 59
- 3D
  - 4-Up view 213
  - 6-Up view 214
  - aligning or deleting a face 209
  - animating the volume 209
  - annotations 209
  - arrow 210
  - Brightness 207
  - Contrast 207
  - controlling transducer movement 203
  - Hue 207
  - imaging direction explained 206
  - imaging direction with untracked freehand 206
  - imaging modes possible with 203
  - imaging overview 204
  - introduction 203
  - label 209
  - Layout options 207
  - license 203
  - measurement warning 204
  - measurements 211
  - moving the volume 209
  - Opacity (Render setting) 212
  - Orientation 207
  - Photorealistic (Render setting) 212
  - Presets 207
  - Render view 212
  - ROI 205
  - ROI markers 205
  - rotating the volume 208
  - slicing the cube 208
  - Span (animation) 209
  - Speed (animation) 209
  - Thickness (Render setting) 212
  - tilting a plane 208
  - untracked freehand 204
  - user views 210
  - volume measurement 211
  - ways to view a data set 210
  - Wire Frame 207
  - Zoom 207
- 3D/4D settings 285
- 4-Up view (3D) 213
- 66810
  - Head2
    - License Tab 286
- 6-Up view (3D) 214
- 73821
  - Head2
    - General Tab 286

## A

- accents
  - typing 23
- ALARA principle 221
- aliasing, CW Doppler
  - moving baseline to overcome 87, 94
- aliasing, Doppler
  - definition 221
  - moving baseline to overcome 221
- angle correction line, drawing of 84
- archiving
  - clearing space on hard disk 65
  - password protection 64
  - to a PACS 218
- array transducer 221
- audio volume 85, 92
- Auto (Cardiac measurement) 221
- automatic curve tracing
  - CW Doppler 92
  - Doppler mode 86
- automatic measurement, TAM and TAMX 99
- Automatic Planimetry 141, 154, 166, 180, 192
- avi format for copied video clips 62

## B

- B/A (measurement) 221
- baseline
  - CW Doppler mode 87, 94
- B-mode
  - adjusting focus position 71
  - depth 73
  - focus 84
  - gain 78
  - TGC 71
  - zoom 72
- bmp format for copied images 61
- bodymark
  - definition 43, 221
  - deleting from image 44, 113, 124, 134, 148, 159, 172, 188
  - on archived images and clip frames 41
  - placing on an image 43, 112, 123, 133, 147, 159, 172, 187
- brachy matrix
  - changing the offset 270
  - defining new 271
  - editing user-defined 271
  - highlighting dot on 162
  - in brachytherapy 161
  - options for user-defined 270
  - superimposing 161
  - user-defined 163
- brachy ruler
  - displaying vertical 0 line 270, 274
  - moving 162

- picture 162
- user-defined 163
- brachytherapy 161
  - entering parameters in Patient window 156
  - verify that guide number is correct on monitor 161
- brightness of monitor, adjusting. See Getting Started.book
- Bubble Burst 78

## C

- C (on monitor, next to frequency) 76
- capturing images 59, 114, 115, 125, 139, 152, 163, 164, 178, 190, 197, 198
- cardiac imaging
  - Cardiac Pro Package 129–141
  - FATE 137–??
  - FATE measurements 137
  - labels 111, 122, 132, 146, 157, 171, 186
  - measurements and calculations 135–??
  - presets 129, 184
- catalog, definition 221
- CHI. See contrast imaging.
- cine
  - about 44
  - definition 221
  - effect of changing some parameters 45
  - frame numbers 45
  - image storage 44
  - in M-mode and D-mode 46
  - measurement markers 46
  - measurements 46
  - turning on and off 45
- color box
  - color mode 80
  - definition 221
- Color Map for VFI (illustration) 107
- color mode
  - about 80
  - color box 80
  - definition 222
- Color Square indicator for VFI 107
- combination mode 74, 222
- composite focus. See multiple focus.
- Compounding 222
- configure layout window 276
- contrast imaging
  - description 75
  - displayed frequencies 76
  - turning on 76
  - using 77
- copying documents
  - format 61
  - how to do it 62
  - selecting format 62
  - without patient ID 62
- cube (3D)
  - rotating 208
  - slicing 208
- CW Doppler 222

- CW Doppler indicator
  - on B-mode image 91, 132
- CW Doppler line
  - about 92
  - picture 92
- CW Doppler mode 87, 94
  - aliasing 87, 94
  - audio volume 85, 92
  - automatic curve tracing 92
  - baseline 87, 94
  - Doppler trace 92
  - gain 86, 93
  - invert 87, 94
  - MI 91
  - sweep speed 94
  - switching between live B-mode and 91
  - TI 91
  - turning off 92
  - turning on 91
  - unfreezing spectrum 91
  - wall filter 87, 94

## D

- database, password protection of 65
- date and time
  - frozen with image 39
- dcn file 217
- Dec T (measurement) 222
- DEFINITY 75
- deleting
  - documents 64
- depth
  - measuring 48
- DICOM
  - changing setup 279
  - filenames 217
  - format for archived images and clips 62
  - format for copied images 61
  - format for copied video clips 62
  - saving or printing to 217
  - setting up 279
  - structured reports 218
- DICOM status indicator 218
- directions 206
- distance, measuring 49
- document
  - caution about deleting 63
  - printing 67
  - saving 59
  - types 59
- document browser
  - and archiving system 63
- documents
  - copying to a CD or USB storage device 62
  - deleting 64
- Doppler gate
  - moving 85
  - picture 84
  - resizing 85

Doppler indicator  
  on B-mode image 84, 105, 121, 145  
  picture 84  
Doppler line, picture 84  
Doppler mode  
  aliasing 221  
  automatic curve tracing 86  
  definition 223  
  Doppler trace 86  
  HPRF 86  
  sample volume 84  
  sweep speed 87  
  turning off 85  
  turning on 84  
Doppler spectrum  
  description 97  
Doppler trace 100  
  CW Doppler mode 92  
  Doppler mode 86  
duplex (definition) 223  
duplex. See combination mode.

## E

ED  
  correct placement of marker 98  
  in A/B (Stuart Index) 100  
  in A/B ratio 100  
  in A/B, definition 221  
  in B/A, definition 221  
  in formula for resistance index 100  
  in RI 100  
  measuring PI manually 101  
  real-time measurements 101  
EDC (measurement) 223  
editing video clips 61  
Elastography 81  
  about 81  
  color box 81  
  color map 82  
  Diameter Comparison Measurement 83  
  quality indicator 82  
  Strain Ratio Measurement 82  
EMC (definition) 223  
ES  
  correct placement of marker 98  
ESD  
  definition 223  
exam  
  pause and resume 64  
Exam Type  
  definition 223  
exam type  
  selecting 19  
Examination List  
  sorting 63

## F

F1, F2 (measurement) 223  
FATE (cardiac imaging) 137–??

FATE measurements 137  
FFT spectrum. See Doppler spectrum.  
focus  
  B-mode 84  
Focus indicator (picture) 70  
focus position, adjusting (B-mode) 71  
FOI (field of interest) 223  
format  
  archived documents 62  
  copied documents 61  
  DICOM 62  
  exported documents 61  
freeze, partial 39  
freezing the image 39  
frequencies (displayed), contrast imaging 76

## G

gain  
  B-mode 78  
  CW Doppler mode 86, 93  
Gleason score 156

## H

H (on monitor, next to frequency) 75  
hard disk  
  clearing space on 65  
  patient archiving quota 65  
HIPAA  
  about 59  
  compliance 59  
  definition 223  
  password protection of database on system 65  
HPRF 86

## I

IEC (definition) 223  
image  
  format of copied 61  
  freezing and unfreezing 39  
image orientation, adjusting 25  
image review. See cine.  
images  
  format 61  
imaging 43, 112, 123, 134, 148, 159, 172, 187  
imaging direction  
  untracked freehand 3D and 206  
imaging plane  
  indicator 43, 44, 112, 113, 123, 124, 134, 148,  
  159, 172, 187, 188  
  selecting 39, 145, 157  
invert  
  CW Doppler mode 87, 94

## K

Keyboard 23

## L

label  
  definition 223

- editing on the image 42
  - moving 42
  - on archived images and clip frames 41
- labeling settings 266
  - bodymarks tab 268
  - default bodymarks tab 269
  - default labels tab 267
  - labels tab 266
- LC (measurement) 223
- letters
  - typing special letters or accents 23
- Linked Split/Dual 41
- login to system 65

**M**

- M/Doppler Gain (key) 77
- manual measurement, TAM and TAMX 99
- MD (minimum diastole)
  - correct placement of marker 98
  - in pulsatility index 100
  - measuring PI manually 101
- mean trace curve
  - automatic 99
- measure & calc settings
  - preferences tab 265
- measurements
  - clearing 48
  - depth 48
  - D-mode 55
  - making 48
  - on a cine image 46
  - on archived images 47
  - results 48
- Measurements and Image Data 23
- measuring tools
  - angle 49
  - B-mode 48
  - circle 51
  - color mode 48
  - distance 49
  - Doppler 55
  - Doppler outline curve 56
  - ellipse 52
  - freehand drawing 53, 54
  - polygon 53, 54
- MI (Mechanical Index)
  - and CHI 76
  - checking setting for contrast imaging 77
  - CW Doppler 91
- MIP (definition) 224
- M-mode
  - about 88
  - image ruler 89
  - line 89
  - monitor setup (picture) 89
- monitor brightness, adjusting. See *Getting Started* book.
- monitor user interface 17
- multiple focus 70

**N**

- needle guide
  - verify correct number on monitor 161
- NEMA (definition) 224
- network password 63
- neuro imaging
  - Brainlab 199–200
  - Brainlab, calibrating 200
  - Brainlab, connecting to Kick system 200
  - Neuro Pro Package 143–154, 155–166, 167–180, 193–200

**O**

- ob/gyn settings 265
  - preference tab 265
- ON/standby button (definition) 225
- Opacity (3D Render setting) 212
- orientation
  - image, changing 25
- orientation of imaging plane 39, 145, 157

**P**

- PACS
  - archiving to 218
  - definition 224
  - saving to 218
- partial freeze 39
- password protection
  - patient archive database 65
- Patient Archiving and Communications System. See PACS.
- patient archiving system
  - password protection 64, 65
- patient information
  - entering 18
  - from DICOM worklist 217
- Patient List 63
- patient list
  - sorting and rearranging columns 63
- pause and resume an examination 64
- PE 224
- persistence, about 224
- phased array 224
- Photorealistic (3D Render setting) 212
- PI
  - definition 224
  - real-time measurement 101
- plane, imaging. See *imaging plane*.
- planimetry
  - definition 224
  - description 160
  - making a calculation 161
  - starting point for calculation 160
- POI (point of interest) 224
- Power Doppler 224
- power failure during file transfer to PACS 218
- power supply cord 224
- preset

- saving 89
- PRF (pulse repetition frequency)
  - and VFI color map (illustration) 107
  - selecting velocity range with 225
- printing
  - images displayed on the monitor 68
  - setting default printer 68
  - thumbnail after opening 68
- Pro Package
  - list of 95
- programmable puncture guide 162
- PS
  - correct placement of marker 98
  - real-time measurement 101
- PSA 224
- PSAD
  - definition 224
- pulse repetition frequency 224
- puncture
  - performing 161
  - puncture line 161
- puncture guide
  - verify that number is correct on monitor 161
- PW Doppler 225

**R**

- Render view (3D) 212
- report
  - about 65
  - adding images 66
  - changing page 66
  - creating 66
  - displaying 66
  - editing 66
  - printing 67
  - saving to patient archiving system 67
- resistance index. See RI.
- RI (Resistance Index)
  - formula 100
- rotation axis
  - defining 52
  - effect on volume determination 53

**S**

- sagittal imaging plane 39, 145, 157
- sample volume
  - Doppler mode 84
  - false 84
  - false, moving 86
  - false, with HRPF 85, 86
  - with angle correction 84
- Save Diagnostic Setup window 90, 116, 126, 140, 153, 165, 179, 191, 199
- saving
  - 2D images 59
  - Diagnostic Setups 89
  - documents 59
  - video clips 59
- sculpting tools (3D) 212

- security settings
  - audit logs 285
  - general tab 281
  - user manager tab 281
- service manual 279, 280
- service settings
  - about tab 287
  - oem setup 288
  - tp licenses tab 287
- simultaneous split-screen imaging 40
- SonoVue 75
- spectrum display, changing smoothness of 87, 94
- split screen
  - simultaneous 40
  - using 40
- SS
  - correct placement of marker 98
  - definition 225
- steering
  - independent D-mode/C-mode 80, 85
- store/network window 277
  - dicom/pacs 279
  - network drive 280
  - printers tab 278
  - store/clip tab 277
  - wifi tab 280
- sweep speed
  - CW Doppler mode 94
- sweep speed, Doppler mode 87
- Sync Steer 85
- Sync Steer (screen key) 80
- system
  - logging in 65

**T**

- TAM
  - definition 99
  - real-time measurement 101
  - ways to measure 99
  - with automatic Doppler curves 100
  - with manual Doppler curves 100
- TAMX
  - definition 99
  - real-time measurement 101
  - ways to measure 99
  - with automatic Doppler curves 100
- TAMX (measurement) 225
- T-area (measurement) 225
- TEH (True Echo Harmonics). See tissue harmonic imaging.
- TEH, definition 225
- TGC
  - adjusting 71, 104, 120, 130, 144, 156, 169, 184, 194
  - definition 225
  - description 71
- Thickness (3D Render setting) 212
- thumbnails
  - printing 115, 126, 139, 152, 164, 179, 191, 198

TI (Thermal Index)  
     adjusting limit 70, 84  
     CW Doppler 91  
     definition 225  
 TIB 225  
 TIC 225  
 time average max. See TAMX.  
 time average mean. See TAM.  
 timer  
     contrast imaging and 77  
     using 77  
 TIS 225  
 tissue harmonic imaging  
     advantages 75  
     description 74  
     using 74  
 transducer  
     selecting 18  
 transverse imaging plane 39, 145, 157  
 trapezoidal view 226  
 triplex, definition 225  
 triplex. See combination mode.  
 True Echo Harmonics. See tissue harmonic imaging.  
 Tru-Focus 71

**V**

vascular calculations  
     correct placement of markers 97  
 vascular imaging  
     capturing clips 115, 126, 139, 152, 164, 178,  
       190, 198  
     capturing frozen images 115, 125, 139, 152, 164,  
       178, 190, 198  
     cine review 114, 125, 139, 152, 163, 178, 190,  
       197  
     copying or archiving images and clips 115, 126,  
       139, 152, 164, 179, 191, 198  
     measurement abbreviations 90, 116, 127, 140  
     measurements and calculations 113–114, 124–  
       ??, 125–??  
     presets 103, 119, 129  
     printing from thumbnail images 115, 126, 139,  
       152, 164, 179, 191, 198  
     printing images displayed on the monitor 115,  
       126, 139, 152, 164, 179, 191, 198  
     reports 114–??, 125–??, 138–??, 151–??, 163–

    ??, 178–??, 190–??, 197–??  
     saving a new preset 116, 126, 140, 153, 164, 179,  
       191, 198  
     Vascular Pro Package 103–117, 119–127  
 Vector Flow Imaging. See VFI.  
 VFI  
     about 105  
     angle-independent imaging 106  
     Color Map  
       as color flow indicator 106  
       illustration 107  
     Color Square 107  
     colors 107  
     using 108  
     velocity range affected by PRF 106  
 video clips  
     capturing 60  
     format 61  
     format of copied 62  
     saving 59  
     viewing 61  
     viewing and editing on system 61  
     viewing on a computer 62  
 viewing  
     exported documents (on external computer) 61  
     video clips 61  
 volume flow, calculating 99  
 volume measurement (3D), making 211  
 voxel, definition 225

**W**

wall filter  
     CW Doppler mode 87, 94  
 wall filter, definition 226  
 worklist  
     patient information from 217  
     retrieving 217  
     selecting a patient from 217

**X**

X-Shine  
     icon 79

**Z**

zoom, B-mode 72



 BK Medical ApS, Mileparken 34, 2730 Herlev, Denmark. T +45 4452 8100 F +45 4452 8199



**BK Medical**  
8 Centennial Drive  
Peabody  
MA01960  
USA  
T + 1 978-326-1300  
bkmedical.com

**USA**  
**Sales & Service**  
BK Medical  
8 Centennial Drive  
Peabody  
MA01960  
USA  
T + 1 978-326-1300  
F + 1 978-326-1399  
bkmedical.com

**Europe and Rest of World**  
**Sales, Service & Design Center**  
BK Medical  
Mileparken 34  
2730 Herlev  
Denmark  
T +45 4452 8100  
F +45 4452 8199  
bkmedical.com